

**Apple II**

**Reference Manual**  
For IIe Only



## Notice

---

Apple Computer, Inc. reserves the right to make improvements in the product described in this manual at any time and without notice.

## Disclaimer of All Warranties and Liabilities

---

Apple Computer, Inc. makes no warranties, either express or implied, with respect to this manual or with respect to the software described in this manual, its quality, performance, merchantability, or fitness for any particular purpose. Apple Computer, Inc. software is sold or licensed "as is." The entire risk as to its quality and performance is with the buyer. Should the programs prove defective following their purchase, the buyer (and not Apple Computer, Inc., its distributor, or its retailer) assumes the entire cost of all necessary servicing, repair, or correction and any incidental or consequential damages. In no event will Apple Computer, Inc. be liable for direct, indirect, incidental, or consequential damages resulting from any defect in the software, even if Apple Computer, Inc. has been advised of the possibility of such damages. Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of implied warranties or liability for incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitation or exclusion may not apply to you.

This manual is copyrighted. All rights are reserved. This document may not, in whole or part, be copied, photocopied, reproduced, translated or reduced to any electronic medium or machine readable form without prior consent, in writing, from Apple Computer, Inc.

© 1982 by Apple Computer, Inc.  
20525 Mariani Avenue  
Cupertino, California 95014  
(408) 996-1010

The word Apple and the Apple logo are registered trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc.

Simultaneously published in the U.S.A and Canada.

---

### Warning

This equipment has been certified to comply with the limits for a Class B computing device, pursuant to Subpart J of Part 15 of FCC Rules. Only peripherals (computer input/output devices, terminals, printers, etc.) certified to comply with the Class B limits may be attached to this computer. Operation with non-certified peripherals is likely to result in interference to radio and TV reception.

---

Written by Allen Wilson of the Apple PCSD  
Publications Department

Reorder Apple Product A2L2005

Apple II

Reference Manual



## **Radio and Television Interference**

The equipment described in this manual generates and uses radio-frequency energy. If it is not installed and used properly, that is, in strict accordance with our instructions, it may cause interference with radio and television reception.

This equipment has been tested and complies with the limits for a Class B computing device in accordance with the specifications in Subpart J, Part 15, of FCC rules. These rules are designed to provide reasonable protection against such interference in a residential installation. However, there is no guarantee that the interference will not occur in a particular installation, especially if you use a "rabbit ear" television antenna. (A "rabbit ear" antenna is the telescoping-rod type usually contained on TV receivers.)

You can determine whether your computer is causing interference by turning it off. If the interference stops, it was probably caused by the computer or its peripheral devices. To further isolate the problem:

- Disconnect the peripheral devices and their input/output cables one at a time. If the interference stops, it is caused by either the peripheral device or its I/O cable. These devices usually require shielded I/O cables. For Apple peripheral devices, you can obtain the proper shielded cable from your dealer. For non-Apple peripheral devices, contact the manufacturer or dealer for assistance.

If your computer does cause interference to radio or television reception, you can try to correct the interference by using one or more of the following measures:

- Turn the TV or radio antenna until the interference stops.
- Move the computer to one side or the other of the TV or radio.
- Move the computer farther away from the TV or radio.
- Plug the computer into an outlet that is on a different circuit than the TV or radio. (That is, make certain the computer and the radio or television set are on circuits controlled by different circuit breakers or fuses.)
- Consider installing a rooftop television antenna with coaxial cable lead-in between the antenna and TV.

If necessary, you should consult your dealer or an experienced radio/television technician for additional suggestions. You may find helpful the following booklet, prepared by the Federal Communications Commission:

*"How to Identify and Resolve Radio-TV Interference Problems"*

This booklet is available from the U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402, stock number 004-000-00345-4.

121 122 123 124 125 126 127 128 129 130 131 132 133 134 135 136 137 138 139 140 141 142 143 144 145 146 147 148 149 150 151 152 153 154 155 156 157 158 159 160 161 162 163 164 165 166 167 168 169 170 171 172 173 174 175 176 177 178 179 180 181 182 183 184 185 186 187 188 189 190 191 192 193 194 195 196 197 198 199 200 201 202 203 204 205 206 207 208 209 210 211 212 213 214 215 216 217 218 219 220 221 222 223 224 225 226 227 228 229 230 231 232 233 234 235 236 237 238 239 240 241 242 243 244 245 246 247 248 249 250 251 252 253 254 255 256 257 258 259 260 261 262 263 264 265 266 267 268 269 270 271 272 273 274 275 276 277 278 279 280 281 282 283 284 285 286 287 288 289 290 291 292 293 294 295 296 297 298 299 300 301 302 303 304 305 306 307 308 309 310 311 312 313 314 315 316 317 318 319 320 321 322 323 324 325 326 327 328 329 330 331 332 333 334 335 336 337 338 339 340 341 342 343 344 345 346 347 348 349 350 351 352 353 354 355 356 357 358 359 360 361 362 363 364 365 366 367 368 369 370 371 372 373 374 375 376 377 378 379 380 381 382 383 384 385 386 387 388 389 390 391 392 393 394 395 396 397 398 399 400 401 402 403 404 405 406 407 408 409 410 411 412 413 414 415 416 417 418 419 420 421 422 423 424 425 426 427 428 429 430 431 432 433 434 435 436 437 438 439 440 441 442 443 444 445 446 447 448 449 449 450 451 452 453 454 455 456 457 458 459 459 460 461 462 463 464 465 466 467 468 469 469 470 471 472 473 474 475 476 477 478 479 479 480 481 482 483 484 485 486 487 488 489 489 490 491 492 493 494 495 496 497 498 499 499 500 501 502 503 504 505 506 507 508 509 509 510 511 512 513 514 515 516 517 518 519 519 520 521 522 523 524 525 526 527 528 529 529 530 531 532 533 534 535 536 537 538 539 539 540 541 542 543 544 545 546 547 548 549 549 550 551 552 553 554 555 556 557 558 559 559 560 561 562 563 564 565 566 567 568 569 569 570 571 572 573 574 575 576 577 578 579 579 580 581 582 583 584 585 586 587 588 589 589 590 591 592 593 594 595 596 597 598 599 599 600 601 602 603 604 605 606 607 608 609 609 610 611 612 613 614 615 616 617 618 619 619 620 621 622 623 624 625 626 627 628 629 629 630 631 632 633 634 635 636 637 638 639 639 640 641 642 643 644 645 646 647 648 649 649 650 651 652 653 654 655 656 657 658 659 659 660 661 662 663 664 665 666 667 668 669 669 670 671 672 673 674 675 676 677 678 679 679 680 681 682 683 684 685 686 687 688 689 689 690 691 692 693 694 695 696 697 698 699 699 700 701 702 703 704 705 706 707 708 709 709 710 711 712 713 714 715 716 717 718 719 719 720 721 722 723 724 725 726 727 728 729 729 730 731 732 733 734 735 736 737 738 739 739 740 741 742 743 744 745 746 747 748 749 749 750 751 752 753 754 755 756 757 758 759 759 760 761 762 763 764 765 766 767 768 769 769 770 771 772 773 774 775 776 777 778 779 779 780 781 782 783 784 785 786 787 788 789 789 790 791 792 793 794 795 796 797 798 799 799 800 801 802 803 804 805 806 807 808 809 809 810 811 812 813 814 815 816 817 818 819 819 820 821 822 823 824 825 826 827 828 829 829 830 831 832 833 834 835 836 837 838 839 839 840 841 842 843 844 845 846 847 848 849 849 850 851 852 853 854 855 856 857 858 859 859 860 861 862 863 864 865 866 867 868 869 869 870 871 872 873 874 875 876 877 878 879 879 880 881 882 883 884 885 886 887 888 889 889 890 891 892 893 894 895 896 897 898 899 899 900 901 902 903 904 905 906 907 908 909 909 910 911 912 913 914 915 916 917 918 919 919 920 921 922 923 924 925 926 927 928 929 929 930 931 932 933 934 935 936 937 938 939 939 940 941 942 943 944 945 946 947 948 949 949 950 951 952 953 954 955 956 957 958 959 959 960 961 962 963 964 965 966 967 968 969 969 970 971 972 973 974 975 976 977 978 979 979 980 981 982 983 984 985 986 987 988 989 989 990 991 992 993 994 995 996 997 998 999 999 1000

# Table of Contents

	<b>Foreword</b>	<b>xi</b>
	xiii  Contents of This Manual	
	xv  Symbols Used in This Manual	
<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>1</b>
	1  Removing the Cover	
	5  The Keyboard	
	5  The Speaker	
	5  The Power Supply	
	6  The Circuit Board	
	7  Connectors on the Circuit Board	
	8  Connectors on the Back Panel	
<b>2</b>	<b>Built-in I/O Devices</b>	<b>9</b>
	11  The Keyboard	
	13  Reading the Keyboard	
	17  The Video-display Generator	
	19  Text Modes	
	19  Text Character Sets	
	21  40-column versus 80-column Text	
	22  Graphics Modes	
	22  Low-resolution Graphics	
	23  High-resolution Graphics	
	26  Display Pages	
	27  Display Mode Switching	
	29  Addressing Display Pages Directly	
	35  Secondary Inputs and Outputs	
	35  The Speaker	
	36  Cassette Input and Output	
	37  The Hand Control Connector Signals	

37	Annunciator Outputs
38	Strobe Output
38	Switch Inputs
39	Analog Inputs
40	Summary of Secondary I/O Locations

## 3

### ***Built-in I/O Firmware***

41

43	Using the I/O Subroutines
44	Apple II Compatibility
45	The 80-column Firmware
47	The Old Monitor
47	The Standard I/O Links
48	Standard Output Features
48	COUT Output Subroutine
50	Control Characters with COUT1
50	The Stop-List Feature
50	The Text Window
52	Inverse and Flashing Text
53	Standard Input Features
54	RDKEY Input Subroutine
54	KEYIN Input Subroutine
55	Escape Codes with KEYIN
56	Cursor Motion in Escape Mode
56	GETLN Input Subroutine
58	Editing with GETLN
58	Cancel Line
58	Backspace
58	Retype

## 4

### ***Memory Organization***

59

61	Main Memory Map
63	RAM Memory Allocation
63	Reserved Memory Pages
64	Page Zero
64	The 6502 Stack
64	The Input Buffer
65	Link-address Storage
65	The Display Buffers
68	Bank-switched Memory
69	Setting Bank Switches
71	Auxiliary Memory and Firmware
73	Memory Mode Switching
76	Auxiliary-memory Subroutines

77	Moving Data to Auxiliary Memory
78	Transferring Control to Auxiliary Memory
79	The Reset Routine
80	The Cold-start Procedure
80	The Warm-start Procedure
81	Forced Cold Start
81	The Reset Vector
83	Automatic Self-test

## Using the Monitor

85

5

87	Invoking the Monitor
88	Syntax of Monitor Commands
89	Monitor Memory Commands
89	Examining Memory Contents
89	Memory Dump
92	Changing Memory Contents
92	Changing One Byte
93	Changing Consecutive Locations
94	Moving Data in Memory
96	Comparing Data in Memory
97	Monitor Register Command
97	Examining and Changing Registers
98	Monitor Cassette Tape Commands
98	Saving Data on Tape
99	Reading Data from Tape
101	Miscellaneous Monitor Commands
101	Display Inverse and Normal
102	Back to BASIC
102	Redirecting Input and Output
103	Hexadecimal Arithmetic
104	Special Tricks with the Monitor
104	Multiple Command Lines
104	Filling Memory
106	Repeating Commands
106	Creating Your Own Commands
107	Machine-language Programs
107	Running a Program
108	Disassembled Programs
110	The Mini-Assembler
113	Mini-Assembler Instruction Formats
115	Summary of Monitor Commands

121	Peripheral-card Memory Spaces
122	Peripheral-card I/O Space
122	Peripheral-card ROM Space
123	Expansion ROM Space
125	Peripheral-card RAM Space
126	I/O Programming Suggestions
127	Finding the Slot Number
127	I/O Addressing
128	RAM Addressing
129	Changing the Standard I/O Links
131	Using Interrupts
131	Other Uses of I/O Memory Space
132	Switching I/O Memory

137	Environmental Specifications
138	The Power Supply
139	The Power Connector
140	The 6502 Microprocessor
141	6502 Timing
143	The Custom Integrated Circuits
143	The Memory Management Unit
145	The Input/Output Unit
147	The PAL Circuit
148	Memory Addressing
148	ROM Addressing
149	RAM Addressing
149	Dynamic-RAM Refreshment
151	Dynamic-RAM Timing
152	The Video Display
153	The Video Counters
154	Display Memory Addressing
154	Display Address Mapping
158	Video Display Modes
158	Text Displays
160	Low-resolution Display
161	High-resolution Display
163	Video Output Signals
164	Built-in I/O Circuits
164	The Keyboard
165	Connecting a Keypad
166	Cassette I/O
166	The Speaker
167	Game I/O Signals

169	Expanding the Apple IIe
169	The Expansion Slots
169	The Peripheral Address Bus
170	The Peripheral Data Bus
170	Loading and Driving Rules
170	Interrupt and DMA Daisy Chains
174	Video Signals on Slot 7
174	The Auxiliary Slot
175	80-column Display Signals

<b><i>The 6502 Instruction Set</i></b>	<b>185</b>
--	------------

## **A**

<b><i>Tables</i></b>	<b>197</b>
----------------------	------------

## **B**

<b><i>Directory of Built-in Subroutines</i></b>	<b>217</b>
---	------------

## **C**

<b><i>Differences Between the Apple IIe and Apple II Plus</i></b>	<b>225</b>
---	------------

## **D**

<b><i>Glossary</i></b>	<b>231</b>
------------------------	------------

## **E**

<b><i>Bibliography</i></b>	<b>253</b>
----------------------------	------------

## **F**

<b><i>Index</i></b>	<b>257</b>
---------------------	------------

266	Numbers
266	Cast of Characters

## List of Figures

3	Figure 1-1.	Exploded Diagram of the Apple IIe
4	Figure 1-2.	Removing the Cover
4	Figure 1-3.	The Apple IIe With the Cover Off
5	Figure 1-4.	Apple IIe Keyboard
6	Figure 1-5.	Circuit Board
7	Figure 1-6.	Expansion Slots
8	Figure 1-7.	Auxiliary Slot
	8 Figure 1-8.	Back Panel Connectors
12	Figure 2-1.	The Keyboard
21	Figure 2-2.	40-column Text Display
22	Figure 2-3.	80-column Text Display
25	Figure 2-4.	High-resolution Display Bits
31	Figure 2-5.	Map of 40-column Text Display
32	Figure 2-6.	Map of 80-column Text Display
33	Figure 2-7.	Map of Low-resolution Graphics Display
	34 Figure 2-8.	Map of High-resolution Graphics Display
62	Figure 4-1.	System Memory Map
63	Figure 4-2.	RAM Allocation Map
68	Figure 4-3.	Bank-switched Memory Map
72	Figure 4-4.	Memory Map with Auxiliary Memory
124	Figure 6-1.	Expansion ROM Enable Circuit
125	Figure 6-2.	ROM Disable Address Decoding
132	Figure 6-3.	I/O Memory Map
142	Figure 7-1.	6502 Timing Signals
143	Figure 7-2.	The MMU Pinouts
145	Figure 7-3.	The IOU Pinouts
147	Figure 7-4.	The PAL Pinouts
149	Figure 7-5.	The 2364 ROM Pinouts
149	Figure 7-6.	The 2316 ROM Pinouts
149	Figure 7-7.	The 2333 ROM Pinouts
150	Figure 7-8.	The 64K RAM Pinouts
152	Figure 7-9.	RAM Timing Signals
155	Figure 7-10.	Display Address Transformation
156	Figure 7-11.	40-column Text Display Memory
159	Figure 7-12.	Video Timing Signals
171	Figure 7-13.	Peripheral-signal Timing
179	Figure 7-14a.	Schematic Diagram, part 1
180	Figure 7-14b.	Schematic Diagram, part 2
181	Figure 7-14c.	Schematic Diagram, part 3
182	Figure 7-14d.	Schematic Diagram, part 4

## List of Tables

12	Table 2-1.	Apple IIe Keyboard Specifications
13, 197	Table 2-2.	Keyboard Memory Locations
14, 198	Table 2-3a.	Keys and ASCII Codes
15, 199	Table 2-3b.	Keys and ASCII Codes
16, 200	Table 2-4.	The ASCII Character Set
18	Table 2-5.	Video Display Specifications
20, 201	Table 2-6.	The Display Character Sets
23, 201	Table 2-7.	Low-resolution Graphics Colors
25, 201	Table 2-8.	High-resolution Graphics Colors
27, 202	Table 2-9.	Video Display Page Locations
28, 203	Table 2-10.	Display Soft Switches
38, 204	Table 2-11.	Annunciator Memory Locations
40, 205	Table 2-12.	Secondary I/O Memory Locations
43	Table 3-1.	Standard I/O Subroutines
44	Table 3-2.	Apple II Mode
48, 206	Table 3-3a.	Control Characters with <code>CBUT1</code>
49, 207	Table 3-3b.	Control Characters with <code>CBUT1</code> , continued
52, 207	Table 3-4.	Text Window Memory Locations
53	Table 3-5.	Text Format Control Values
55, 208	Table 3-6.	Escape Codes
57	Table 3-7.	Prompt Characters
66	Table 4-1.	Monitor Zero-page Usage
66	Table 4-2.	Applesoft Zero-page Usage
67	Table 4-3.	Integer BASIC Zero-page Usage
67	Table 4-4.	DOS 3.3 Zero-page Usage
69, 209	Table 4-5.	Bank Select Switches
75, 210	Table 4-6.	Auxiliary-memory Select Switches
76	Table 4-7.	Auxiliary-memory Routines
77	Table 4-8.	Parameters for <code>AUXMOVE</code> Routine
78	Table 4-9.	Parameters for <code>XFER</code> Routine
82, 211	Table 4-10.	Page 3 Vectors
114	Table 5-1.	Mini-assembler Address Formats
122, 212	Table 6-1.	Peripheral-card I/O Memory Locations
123, 212	Table 6-2.	Peripheral-card ROM Memory Locations
125, 213	Table 6-3.	Peripheral-card RAM Memory Locations
128, 214	Table 6-4.	Peripheral-card I/O Base Addresses
133, 214	Table 6-5.	I/O Memory Switches

<b>137</b>	<b>Table 7-1.</b>	Summary of Environmental Specifications
<b>138</b>	<b>Table 7-2.</b>	Power Supply Specifications
<b>139</b>	<b>Table 7-3.</b>	Power Connector Signal Specifications
<b>140</b>	<b>Table 7-4.</b>	6502 Microprocessor Specifications
<b>141</b>	<b>Table 7-5.</b>	6502 Timing Signal Descriptions
<b>144</b>	<b>Table 7-6.</b>	The MMU Signal Descriptions
<b>146</b>	<b>Table 7-7.</b>	The IOU Signal Descriptions
<b>147</b>	<b>Table 7-8.</b>	The PAL Signal Descriptions
<b>150</b>	<b>Table 7-9.</b>	RAM Address Multiplexing
<b>151</b>	<b>Table 7-10.</b>	Dynamic RAM Timing Signals
<b>157</b>	<b>Table 7-11.</b>	Display Memory Addressing
<b>158</b>	<b>Table 7-12.</b>	Memory Address Bits for Display Modes
<b>160</b>	<b>Table 7-13.</b>	Character-Generator Control Signals
<b>163</b>	<b>Table 7-14.</b>	Internal Video Connector Signals
<b>165</b>	<b>Table 7-15.</b>	Keyboard Connector Signals
<b>165</b>	<b>Table 7-16.</b>	Keypad Connector Signals
<b>166</b>	<b>Table 7-17.</b>	Speaker Connector Signals
<b>168</b>	<b>Table 7-18.</b>	Game I/O Connector Signals
<b>172</b>	<b>Table 7-19a.</b>	Expansion Slot Signals
<b>173</b>	<b>Table 7-19b.</b>	Expansion Slot Signals, continued
<b>174</b>	<b>Table 7-19c.</b>	Expansion Slot Signals, continued
<b>176</b>	<b>Table 7-20a.</b>	Auxiliary Slot Signals
<b>177</b>	<b>Table 7-20b.</b>	Auxiliary Slot Signals, continued
<b>178</b>	<b>Table 7-20c.</b>	Auxiliary Slot Signals, continued

# Foreword

This is the reference manual for the Apple IIe personal computer. It contains detailed descriptions of all of the hardware and firmware that make up the Apple IIe and provides the technical information that peripheral-card designers and programmers need. There is an Addendum, bound separately, that contains source listings of the built-in firmware.

This manual contains a lot of information about the way the Apple IIe works, but it doesn't tell you how to use the Apple IIe. For this, you should read the other Apple IIe manuals, especially the following:

- The Apple IIe Owner's Manual
- The Applesoft Tutorial

This manual is designed to answer the question, What's inside the box? It describes the internal operation of the Apple IIe as completely as possible in a single volume. The criterion for deciding to include an item of information was whether it would help an assembly-language programmer or peripheral designer.

## Contents of This Manual

The material in this manual is presented roughly in order of increasing intimacy with the hardware; the farther you go in the manual, the more technical the material becomes. The main subject areas are

- Introduction: Foreword and Chapter 1
- Use of built-in features: Chapters 2 and 3
- How the memory is organized: Chapter 4
- Information for programmers: Chapters 5 and 6

- Hardware implementation: Chapter 7
- Additional information: Appendices and Addendum

Chapter 1 identifies the main parts of the Apple IIe and tells where in the manual each part is described.

The next two chapters describe the built-in input and output features of the Apple IIe. This part of the manual includes information you need for low-level programming on the Apple IIe. Chapter 2 describes the built-in I/O features and Chapter 3 tells you how to use the firmware that supports them.

Chapter 4 describes the way the Apple IIe's memory space is organized, including the allocation of programmable memory for the video display buffers.

Chapter 5 is a user manual for the Monitor that is included in the built-in firmware. The Monitor is a system program that you can use for program debugging at the machine level.

Chapter 6 describes the programmable features of the peripheral-card connectors and gives guidelines for their use.

Chapter 7 is a detailed description of the hardware that implements the features described in the earlier chapters. This information is included primarily for programmers and peripheral-card designers, but it will also help you if you just want to understand more about the way the Apple IIe works.

Additional reference information appears in the appendices. Appendix A is the manufacturer's description of the 6502 instruction set.

Appendix B contains additional copies of some of the tables that appear in the body of the manual. The ones you will need to refer to often are duplicated here for easy reference.

Appendix C is a directory of the built-in I/O subroutines, including their functions and starting addresses.

Appendix D lists the differences between the Apple IIe and the earlier Apple II and Apple II Plus models and tells you which sections to look at for more information.

Following Appendix D is a glossary defining many of the technical terms used in this manual. Some terms that describe the use of the Apple IIe are defined in the glossaries of the other manuals listed above.

Following the appendices, there is a selected bibliography of sources of additional information.

The Addendum to this manual contains the source listing of the Monitor firmware. You can refer to it to find out more about the operation of the Monitor subroutines listed in Appendix C.

---

### ***Symbols Used in This Manual***

Special text in this manual is set off in several different ways, as shown in these examples.

 Information that appears on the display screen is set off by this screen-shaped outline.

---

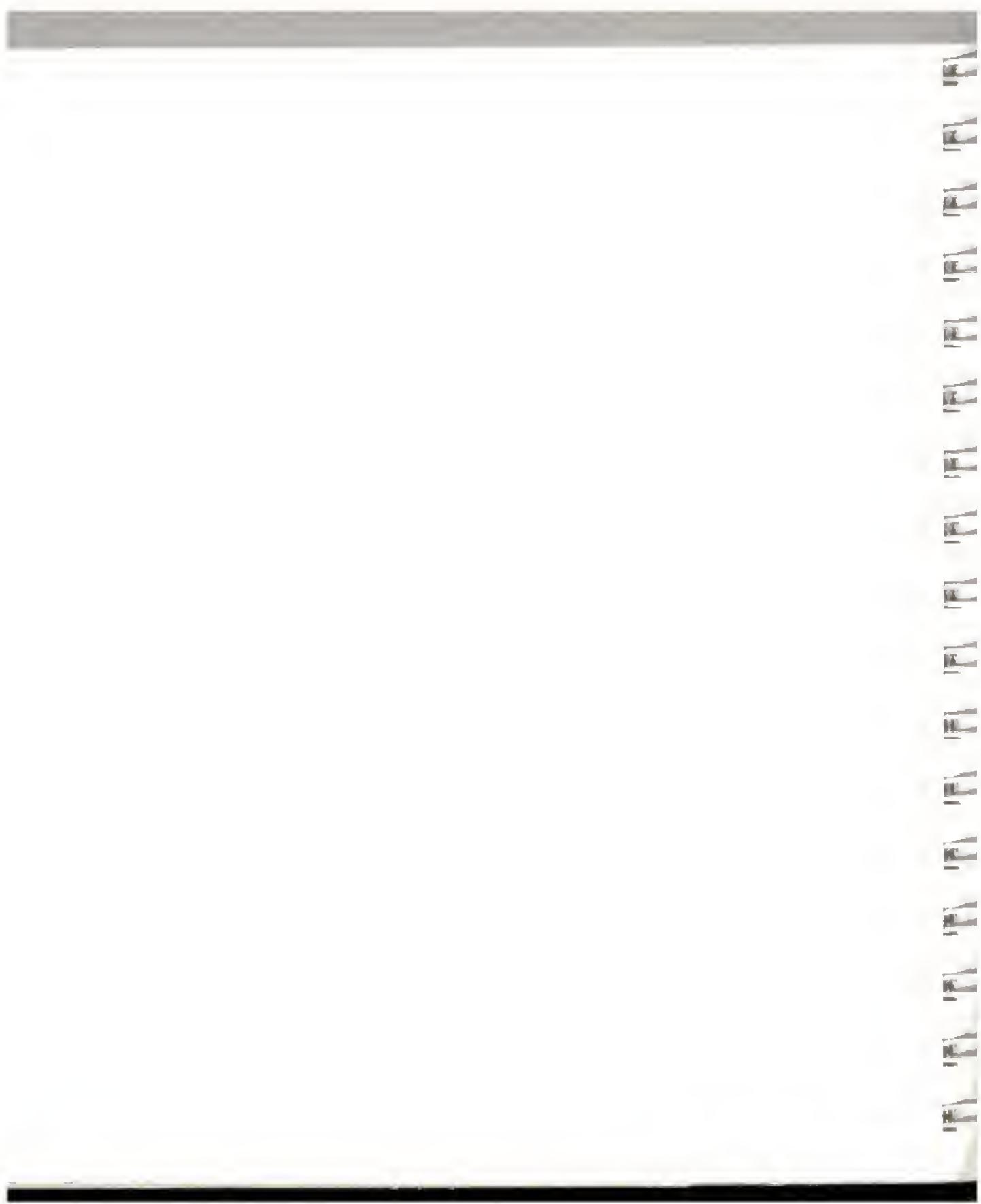
#### **Warning**

Important warnings appear in boxes like this.

---

Captions, definitions, and other short items appear in marginal glosses like this.

 Information that is useful but is incidental to the text appears in grey boxes like this. You may want to skip over such boxes and return to them later.



## *Introduction*

---

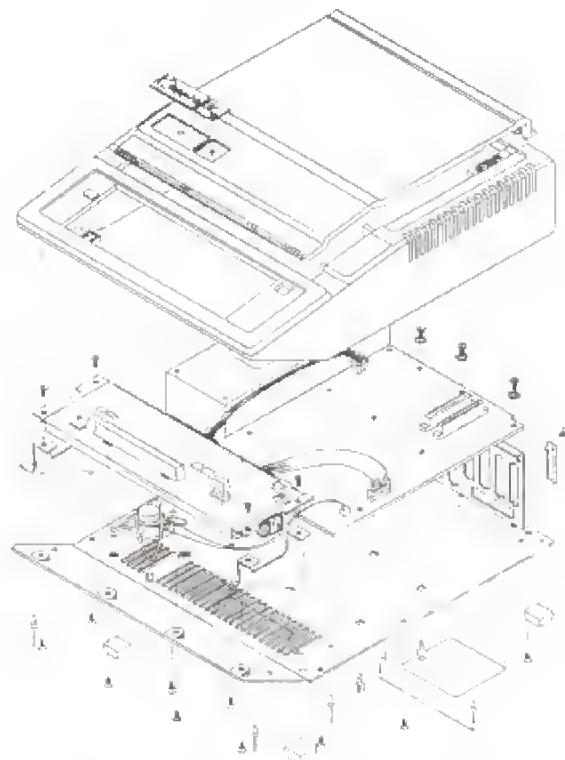
- 4 Removing the Cover
- 5 The Keyboard
- 5 The Speaker
- 5 The Power Supply
- 6 The Circuit Board
- 7 Connectors on the Circuit Board
- 8 Connectors on the Back Panel



## *Introduction*

This first chapter introduces you to the Apple IIe itself. It shows you what the inside looks like, identifies the major components that make up the machine, and tells you where to find information about each one. These major components are shown in the diagram in Figure 1.1.

**Figure 1-1** Exploded Diagram of the Apple IIe



## Removing the Cover

Remove the cover of the Apple IIe by pulling up on the back edge until the fasteners on either side pop loose, then move the cover an inch or so towards the rear of the machine to free the front of the cover, as shown in Figure 1-2. What you will see is shown in Figure 1-3.

Figure 1-2 Removing the Cover



Figure 1-3 The Apple IIe with the Cover Off



### Warning

There is a red LED (light-emitting diode) inside the Apple IIe, in the left rear corner of the circuit board. If the LED is on, it means that the power is on and you must turn it off before you insert or remove anything. To avoid damaging the Apple IIe, don't even THINK of changing anything inside it without first turning off the power.

## The Keyboard

The keyboard is the Apple IIe's primary input device. As shown in Figure 1-4, it has a normal typewriter layout, upper- and lowercase, with all of the special characters in the ASCII character set. (ASCII stands for American Standard Code for Information Interchange.) The keyboard is fully integrated into the machine; its operation is described in the first part of Chapter 2. Firmware subroutines for reading the keyboard are described in Chapter 3.

Figure 1-4 Apple IIe Keyboard



## The Speaker

The Apple IIe has a small loudspeaker in the bottom of the case, as shown in Figure 1-1. The speaker enables Apple IIe programs to produce a variety of sounds that make the programs more useful and interesting. The way programs control the speaker is described in Chapter 2.

## The Power Supply

The power supply is inside the flat metal box along the left side of the interior of the Apple IIe. It provides power for the main board and for any peripheral cards installed in the Apple IIe.

The power supply produces four different voltages: +5V, -5V, +12V, and -12V. It is a high-efficiency switching supply, and includes special circuits that protect it and the rest of the Apple IIe against short circuits and other mishaps. Complete specifications of the Apple IIe power supply appear in Chapter 7.

The power switch and the socket for the power cord are mounted directly on the back of the power supply's metal case. This mounting ensures that all the circuits that carry dangerous voltages are inside the power supply. Do not defeat this design feature by attempting to open the power supply.

## The Circuit Board

All of the electronic parts of the Apple IIe are attached to the circuit board, which is mounted flat in the bottom of the case.

Figure 1-5 Circuit Board

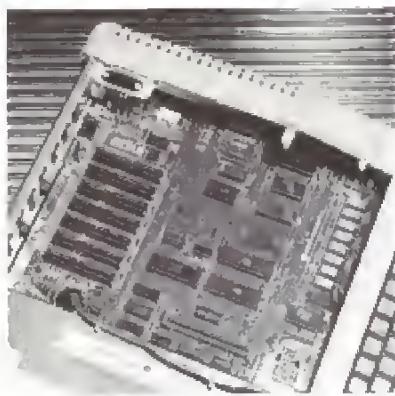


Figure 1-5 shows the main integrated circuits (ICs) in the Apple IIe. They are the central processing unit (CPU), the keyboard encoder and read-only memory (ROM), the two interpreter ROMs, and the custom integrated circuits: the Input Output Unit (IOU) and the Memory Management Unit (MMU).

The CPU is a 6502B microprocessor. The 6502B is a high-speed version of the 6502, which is an eight-bit microprocessor with a sixteen-bit address bus. It uses instruction pipelining for faster processing than comparable microprocessors. In the Apple IIe, the 6502B runs at 1 MHz and performs up to 500,000 eight-bit operations per second. The specifications of the 6502B are given in Chapter 7; the 6502 instruction set is given in Appendix A.

The keyboard is decoded by an AY-3600-type integrated circuit and a read-only memory (ROM). These devices are described in Chapter 7.

The interpreter ROMs are integrated circuits that contain the Applesoft BASIC interpreter. The ROMs are described in Chapter 7. The Applesoft language is described in the *Applesoft Tutorial* and the *Applesoft Reference Manual*.

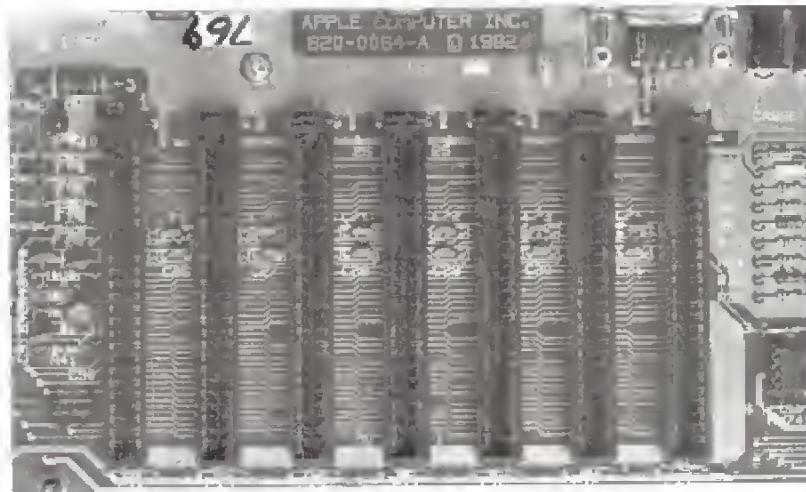
Two of the large IC's are custom-made for the Apple IIe: the MMU and the IOU. The MMU IC contains most of the logic that controls memory addressing in the Apple IIe. The organization of the memory is described in Chapter 4; the circuitry in the MMU itself is described in Chapter 7.

The IOU IC contains most of the logic that controls the built-in input/output features of the Apple IIe. These features are described in Chapter 2 and Chapter 3; the IOU circuits are described in Chapter 7.

## Connectors on The Circuit Board

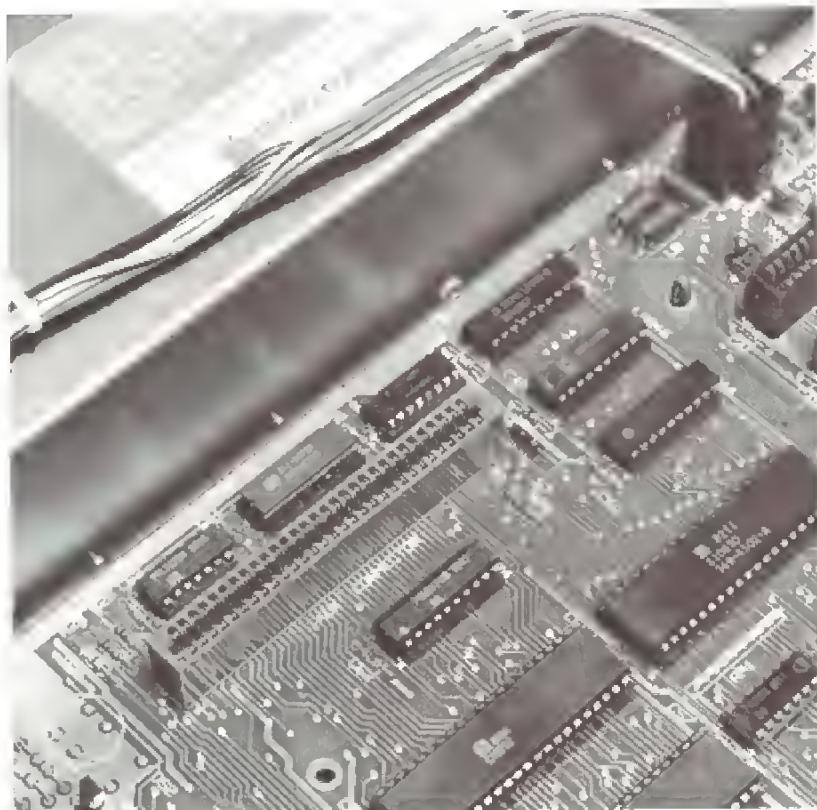
The seven slots lined up along the back of the Apple IIe circuit board are the expansion slots, sometimes called peripheral slots (see Figure 1-6). These slots make it possible to attach additional hardware to the Apple IIe. Chapter 6 tells you how your programs deal with the devices that plug into these slots; Chapter 7 describes the circuitry for the slots themselves.

Figure 1-6 Expansion Slots



The large slot next to the left-hand side of the circuit board is the auxiliary slot (Figure 1-7). If your Apple IIe has an Apple IIe 80-column text card, it will be installed in this slot. The 80-column display option is fully integrated into the Apple IIe; it is described along with the other display features in Chapter 2. The hardware and firmware interfaces to this card are described in Chapter 7.

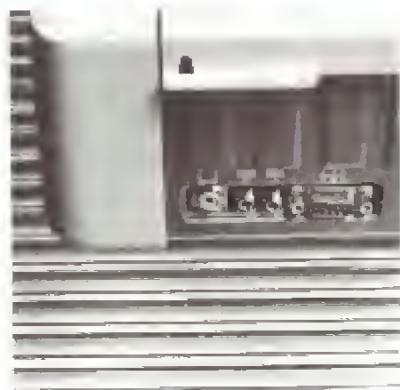
Figure 1-7 Auxiliary Slot



There are also smaller connectors for game I/O and for an internal RF (radio frequency) modulator. These connectors are described in Chapter 7.

### Connectors on the Back Panel

Figure 1-8 Back Panel Connectors



The back of the Apple IIe has two miniature phone jacks for connecting a cassette recorder, an RCA-type jack for a video monitor, and a 9-pin D-type miniature connector for the hand controls, as shown in Figure 1-8. In addition to these, there are spaces for additional connectors used with the peripheral cards installed in the Apple IIe. The installation manuals for the peripheral cards contain instructions for installing the peripheral connectors.

## *Built-in I/O Devices*

---

- 11 The Keyboard
- 13 Reading the Keyboard
- 17 The Video-display Generator
- 19 Text Modes
- 19 Text Character Sets
- 21 40-column versus 80-column Text
- 22 Graphics Modes
- 22 Low-resolution Graphics
- 23 High-resolution Graphics
- 26 Display Pages
- 27 Display Mode Switching
- 29 Addressing Display Pages Directly
- 35 Secondary Inputs and Outputs
- 35 The Speaker
- 36 Cassette Input and Output
- 37 The Hand Control Connector Signals
- 37 Annunciator Outputs
- 38 Strobe Output
- 38 Switch Inputs
- 39 Analog Inputs
- 40 Summary of Secondary I/O Locations



## *Built-in I/O Devices*

This chapter describes the input and output (I/O) devices built into the Apple IIe in terms of their functions and the way they are used by programs. The built-in I/O devices are

- keyboard
- video-display generator
- speaker
- cassette input and output
- game input and output

At the lowest level, programs use the built-in I/O devices by reading and writing to dedicated memory locations. This chapter lists these locations for each I/O device. It also gives the locations of the internal soft-switches that select the different display modes of the Apple IIe. For descriptions of the built-in I/O hardware, refer to Chapter 7.

This method of input and output — loading and storing directly to specific locations in memory — is not the only method you can use. For many of your programs, it may be more convenient to call the built-in I/O routines stored in the Apple IIe's firmware. These firmware routines are described in Chapter 3.

### *The Keyboard*

The primary input device of the Apple IIe is its built-in keyboard. The keyboard has 63 keys and is similar to the keyboard of a typewriter. The Apple IIe keyboard has automatic repeat on all keys: hold the key down to repeat. It also has N-key rollover, which means that you can hold down any number of keys while typing another. Of course, if you hold the keys down much longer

than the length of time you would hold them down during normal typing, the automatic-repeat function will start repeating the last key you pressed.

The keyboard arrangement shown in Figure 2-1 is the standard one used in the United States. The specifications for the keyboard are given in Table 2-1. Apple IIe's manufactured for sale in Europe have a slightly different standard keyboard arrangement and include provisions for switching between two different arrangements.

Figure 2-1 The Keyboard



In addition to the keys normally used for typing characters, there are four cursor-control keys with arrows: left, right, down, and up. The cursor-control keys can be read the same as other keys; their codes are \$08, \$15, \$0A, and \$0B (see Table 2-3a).

Table 2-1 Apple IIe Keyboard Specifications

Number of keys:	63
Character encoding:	ASCII
Number of codes:	128
Special keys:	<b>CONTROL</b> , <b>SHIFT</b> , <b>CAPS LOCK</b> , <b>ESC</b> , <b>RESET</b> , <b>LEFT-ARROW</b> , <b>RIGHT-ARROW</b> , <b>UP-ARROW</b> , <b>DOWN-ARROW</b> , <b>OPEN-APPLE</b> , <b>SOLID-APPLE</b>
Rollover:	N-key
Electrical interface:	AY-5-3600 keyboard encoder

Four special keys, **CONTROL**, **SHIFT**, **CAPS LOCK**, and **ESC** change the codes generated by the other keys. The **CONTROL** key is similar to the ASCII **CTRL** key. Three other keys have special functions: the **RESET** key, and two keys marked with apples, one outlined, or open, and one solid, or closed. Pressing the **RESET** key with the **CONTROL** key depressed resets the Apple IIe, as described in Chapter 4. The Apple keys are connected to the one-bit game inputs, described later in this chapter.

The electrical interface between the Apple IIe and the keyboard is a ribbon cable with a 26-pin connector. This cable carries the keyboard signals to the encoding circuitry on the main board. A complete description of the electrical interface to the keyboard is given in Chapter 7.

### Reading the Keyboard

The keyboard encoder and ROM generate all 128 ASCII codes, so all of the special character codes in the ASCII character set are available from the keyboard. Machine-language programs obtain character codes from the keyboard by reading a byte from the keyboard-data location shown in Table 2-2.

Table 2-2 Keyboard Memory Locations

Location	Hex	Decimal	Description
	\$C000	49152 -16384	Keyboard data and strobe
	\$C010	49168 -16368	Any-key-down flag and Clear-strobe switch

Hexadecimal refers to the base-16 number system, which uses the ten digits 0 through 9 and the six letters A through F to represent values from 0 to 15.

Your programs can get the code for the last key pressed by reading the keyboard-data location. Table 2-2 gives this location in three different forms: the *hexadecimal* value used in assembly language, indicated by a preceding dollar sign (\$); the decimal value used in Applesoft BASIC, and the complementary decimal value used in Apple Integer BASIC. (Integer BASIC requires that values greater than 32767 be written as the number obtained by subtracting 65536 from the value. These are the decimal numbers shown as negative in the tables; refer to the *Apple II BASIC Programming Manual*.) The low-order seven bits of the byte at the keyboard location contain the character code; the high-order bit of this byte is the strobe bit, described below.

location. This location is a combination flag and switch; the flag tells whether any key is down, and the switch clears the strobe bit. The switch function of this memory location is called a *soft switch* because it is controlled by software. In this case, it doesn't matter whether the program reads or writes, and it doesn't matter what data the program writes: the only action that occurs is the resetting of the keyboard strobe. Similar soft switches, described later, are used for controlling other functions in the Apple IIe.

Any time you read the Any-key-down flag, you also clear the keyboard strobe. If your program needs to read both the flag and the strobe, it must read the strobe bit first.

**Table 2-3b** Keys and ASCII Codes, continued

Codes are shown here in hexadecimal; to find the decimal equivalents, use Table 2-4.

Key	Normal	Control	Shift	Both
}]	5D	1D	7D	1D
~	60	60	7E	7E
A	61	01	41	01
B	62	02	42	02
C	63	03	43	03
D	64	04	44	04
E	65	05	45	05
F	66	06	46	06
G	67	07	47	07
H	68	08	48	08
I	69	09	49	09
J	6A	0A	4A	0A
K	6B	0B	4B	0B
L	6C	0C	4C	0C
M	6D	0D	4D	0D
N	6E	0E	4E	0E
O	6F	0F	4F	0F
P	70	10	50	10
Q	71	11	51	11
R	72	12	52	12
S	73	13	53	13
T	74	14	54	14
U	75	15	55	15
V	76	16	56	16
W	77	17	57	17
X	78	18	58	18
Y	79	19	59	19
Z	7A	1A	5A	1A

After the keyboard strobe has been cleared, it remains low until another key is pressed. Even after you have cleared the strobe, you can still read the character code at the keyboard location. The data byte has a different value, because the high-order bit is no longer set, but the ASCII code in the seven low-order bits is the same until another key is pressed. Tables 2-3a and 2-3b show the ASCII codes for most of the keys on the keyboard of the Apple IIe.

Table 2-4 The ASCII Character Set

Dec	Hex	Char									
0	00	NUL	32	20	SP	64	40	@	96	60	*
1	01	SOH	33	21	1	65	41	A	97	61	a
2	02	STX	34	22	"	66	42	B	98	62	b
3	03	ETX	35	23	#	67	43	C	99	63	c
4	04	EOT	36	24	\$	68	44	D	100	64	d
5	05	ENO	37	25	%	69	45	E	101	65	e
6	06	ACK	38	26	&	70	46	F	102	66	f
7	07	BEL	39	27	'	71	47	G	103	67	g
8	08	BS	40	28	(	72	48	H	104	68	h
9	09	HT	41	29	)	73	49	I	105	69	i
10	0A	LF	42	2A	-	74	4A	J	106	6A	j
11	0B	VT	43	2B	+	75	4B	K	107	6B	k
12	0C	FF	44	2C	,	76	4C	L	108	6C	l
13	0D	CR	45	2D	-	77	4D	M	109	6D	m
14	0E	SO	46	2E	.	78	4E	N	110	6E	n
15	0F	SI	47	2F	/	79	4F	O	111	6F	o
16	10	DLE	48	30	0	80	50	P	112	70	p
17	11	DC1	49	31	1	81	51	Q	113	71	q
18	12	DC2	50	32	2	82	52	R	114	72	r
19	13	DC3	51	33	3	83	53	S	115	73	s
20	14	DC4	52	34	4	84	54	T	116	74	t
21	15	NAK	53	35	5	85	55	U	117	75	u
22	16	SYN	54	36	6	86	56	V	118	76	v
23	17	ETB	55	37	7	87	57	W	119	77	w
24	18	CAN	56	38	8	88	58	X	120	78	x
25	19	EM	57	39	9	89	59	Y	121	79	y
26	1A	SUB	58	3A	:	90	5A	Z	122	7A	z
27	1B	ESC	59	3B	:	91	5B	\	123	7B	{
28	1C	FS	60	3C	<	92	5C	\	124	7C	
29	1D	GS	61	3D	-	93	5D	^	125	7D	}
30	1E	RS	62	3E	>	94	5E	~	126	7E	-
31	1F	US	63	3F	?	95	5F	—	127	7F	DEL

There are several special-function keys that do not generate ASCII codes. For example, you cannot read the **CONTROL**, **SHIFT**, and **CAPS LOCK** keys directly, but pressing one of these keys alters the character codes produced by the other keys.

Another key that doesn't generate a code is the **RESET** key, located at the upper-right corner of the keyboard; it is connected directly to the Apple IIe's circuits. Pressing the **RESET** key with the **CONTROL** key depressed normally causes the system to stop whatever program it's running and restart itself. This restarting process is called the reset routine, and it is described in Chapter 4.

Two more special keys are marked with two versions of the Apple logo and located on either side of the space bar. The key with the outlined apple is the **OPEN-APPLE** key; the key with the solid-color apple is the **SOLID-APPLE** key. These keys are connected to the one-bit game inputs, which are described later in this chapter. Pressing them in combination with the **CONTROL** and **RESET** keys causes the built-in firmware to perform special reset and self-test cycles, described with the reset routine in Chapter 4.

## ***The Video Display Generator***

The primary output device of the Apple IIe is the video display. You can use any ordinary video monitor, either color or black-and-white, to display video information from the Apple IIe. An ordinary monitor is one that accepts composite video compatible with the standard set by the NTSC (National Television Standards Committee). If you use Apple IIe color graphics with a black-and-white monitor, the display will appear as different shades of gray.

If you are only using 40-column text and graphics modes, you can use a television set for your video display. If the TV set has an input connector for composite video, you can connect it directly to your Apple IIe; if it does not, you'll need to attach an RF video modulator between the Apple IIe and the television set.

With the 80-column text card installed, the Apple IIe can produce an 80-column text display. However, if you use an ordinary color or black-and-white television set, 80-column text will be too blurry to read. For a clear 80-column display, you must use a high-resolution video monitor with a bandwidth of 14 MHz or greater.

The specifications for the video display are summarized in Table 2-5.

**Table 2-5** Video Display Specifications

Display modes:	40-column text 80-column text with optional card Low-resolution color graphics High-resolution color graphics
Text capacity:	24 lines by 40 columns 24 lines by 80 columns with optional card
Character set:	96 ASCII characters (uppercase and lowercase)
Display formats:	Normal, Inverse, Flashing
Low-resolution graphics:	16 colors, 40 horizontal by 48 vertical
High-resolution graphics:	6 colors, 280 horizontal by 192 vertical

The video signal produced by the Apple IIe is NTSC-compatible composite color video. It is available at three places: the RCA-type phono jack on the back of the Apple IIe, the single Molex-type pin on the main circuit board near the back on the right side, and one of the group of four Molex-type pins in the same area on the main board. Use the RCA-type phono jack to connect a video monitor or an external video modulator; use the Molex pins to connect the type of video modulator that fits inside the Apple IIe case. For a full description of the video signal and the connections to the Molex-type pins, refer to the section "Video Output Signals" in Chapter 7.

The Apple IIe can produce four different kinds of video display:

- Text, 24 lines of 40 characters
- Text, 24 lines of 80 characters (with optional card)
- Low-resolution graphics, 40 by 48, in 16 colors
- High-resolution graphics, 280 by 192, in 6 colors

Either of the two text modes can display all 96 ASCII characters: the upper- and lowercase letters, numbers, and symbols.

Either of the graphics displays can have four lines of text, either 40-column or 80-column, at the bottom of the screen. Graphics displays with text at the bottom are called *mixed-mode displays*.

The low-resolution graphics display is an array of colored blocks, 40 wide by 48 high, in any of sixteen colors. In mixed mode, the four lines of text replace the bottom eight rows of blocks, leaving 40 rows of 40 blocks each.

The high-resolution graphics display is an array of dots, 280 wide by 192 high. There are six colors available in high-resolution displays, but a given dot can only use four of the six colors. In mixed mode, the four lines of text replace the bottom 32 rows of dots, leaving 160 rows of 280 dots each.

### **Text Modes**

The text characters displayed include the upper- and lowercase letters, the ten digits, punctuation marks, and special characters. Each character is displayed in an area of the screen that is seven dots wide by eight dots high. The characters are formed by a dot matrix five dots wide, leaving two blank columns of dots between characters in a row. Except for lowercase letters with descenders, the characters are only seven dots high, leaving one blank line of dots between rows of characters.

The normal display has white (or other single color) dots on a black background. Characters can also be displayed as black dots on a white background; this is called *inverse format*.

### **Text Character Sets**

The Apple IIe can display either of two text character sets: the primary set or an alternate set. The forms of the characters in the two sets are actually the same, but the available display formats are different. The display formats are

- *normal*, with white dots on a black screen;
- *inverse*, with black dots on a white screen; and
- *flashing*, alternating between normal and inverse.

With the primary character set, the Apple IIe can display uppercase characters in all three formats: normal, inverse, and flashing. Lowercase letters can only be displayed in normal format. The primary character set is compatible with most software written for the Apple II and Apple II Plus models, which can display text in flashing format but don't have lowercase characters.

The alternate character set sacrifices the flashing format for a complete inverse format. With the alternate character set, the Apple IIe can display uppercase letters, lowercase letters, numbers, and special characters in either normal format or inverse format.

You select the character set by means of the alternate-text soft switch, described below in the section "Display Mode Switching". Table 2-6 shows the character codes in decimal and hexadecimal for the Apple IIe primary and alternate character sets in normal, inverse, and flashing formats.

**Table 2-6** The Display Character Sets

To identify particular characters and values, refer to Table 2-4.

Hex Values	Primary Character Set:		Alternate Character Set:	
	Character Type	Format	Character Type	Format
\$00-\$1F	Uppercase letters	Inverse	Uppercase letters	Inverse
\$20-\$3F	Special characters	Inverse	Special characters	Inverse
\$40-\$5F	Uppercase letters	Flashing	Uppercase letters	Inverse
\$60-\$7F	Special characters	Flashing	Lowercase letters	Inverse
\$80-\$9F	Uppercase letters	Normal	Uppercase letters	Normal
\$A0-\$BF	Special characters	Normal	Special characters	Normal
\$C0-\$DF	Uppercase letters	Normal	Uppercase letters	Normal
\$E0-\$FF	Lowercase letters	Normal	Lowercase letters	Normal

Each character on the screen is stored as one byte of display data. The low-order six bits make up the ASCII code of the character being displayed. The remaining two (high-order) bits select inverse or flashing format and uppercase or lowercase characters. In the primary character set, bit 7 selects inverse or normal format and bit 6 controls character flashing. In the alternate character set, bit 6 selects between upper- and lowercase, according to the ASCII character codes, and flashing format is not available.

#### 40-column versus 80-column Text

The Apple IIe has two modes of text display: 40-column and 80-column. (The 80-column display mode described in this manual is the one you get with the 80-column text card or other auxiliary-memory card installed in the auxiliary slot.) The number of dots in each character does not change, but the characters in 80-column mode are only half as wide as the characters in 40-column mode. Compare Figure 2-2 and Figure 2-3. On an ordinary color or black-and-white television set, the narrow characters in the 80-column display blur together; you must use the 40-column mode to display text on a television set.

Figure 2-2 40-column Text Display

```
1LIST 0,100
10 REM APPLESOFT CHARACTER DEMO
20 TEXT : HOME
30 PRINT : PRINT "APPLESOFT Character Demo"
40 PRINT : PRINT "Which character set--"
50 PRINT : INPUT "Primary (P) or
   Alternate (A) ?": A$
60 IF LEN(A$) < 1 THEN 50
65 LET A$ = LEFT$(A$,1)
70 IF A$ = "P" THEN POKE 49166,
   0
80 IF A$ = "A" THEN POKE 49167,
   0
90 PRINT : PRINT "...printing the
   same line, first"
100 PRINT "in NORMAL, then INVERSE, then FLASH": PRINT
```

Figure 2-3 80-column Text Display



## Graphics Modes

The Apple IIe can produce video graphics in either of two different modes. Both graphics modes treat the screen as a rectangular array of spots. Normally, your programs will use the features of some high-level language to draw graphics dots, lines, and shapes in these arrays; this section describes the way the resulting graphics data are stored in the Apple IIe's memory.

### Low-resolution Graphics

In the low-resolution graphics mode, the Apple IIe displays an array of 48 rows by 40 columns of colored blocks. Each block can be any one of sixteen colors, including black and white. On a black-and-white monitor or television set, these colors appear as black, white, and three shades of gray. There are no blank dots between blocks; adjacent blocks of the same color merge to make a larger shape.

Data for the low-resolution graphics display is stored in the same part of memory as the data for the 40-column text display. Each byte contains data for two low-resolution graphics blocks. The two blocks are displayed one atop the other in a display space the same size as a 40-column text character, seven dots wide by eight dots high.

Half a byte — four bits, or one nybble — is assigned to each graphics block. Each nybble can have a value from 0 to 15, and this value determines which one of sixteen colors appears on the

screen. The colors and their corresponding nibble values are shown in Table 2-7. In each byte, the low-order nibble sets the color for the top block of the pair, and the high-order nibble sets the color for the bottom block. Thus, a byte containing the hexadecimal value \$D8 produces a brown block atop a yellow block on the screen.

**Table 2-7** Low-resolution Graphics Colors

Colors may vary, depending upon the controls on the monitor or television set.

Nibble Value Decimal	Hex	Color	Nibble Value Decimal	Hex	Color
0	\$0	Black	8	\$8	Brown
1	\$1	Magenta	9	\$9	Orange
2	\$2	Dark Blue	10	\$A	Grey 2
3	\$3	Purple	11	\$B	Pink
4	\$4	Dark Green	12	\$C	Light Green
5	\$5	Grey 1	13	\$D	Yellow
6	\$6	Medium Blue	14	\$E	Aquamarine
7	\$7	Light Blue	15	\$F	White

As explained below in the section "Display Pages", the text display and the low-resolution graphics display use the same area in memory. Most programs that generate text and graphics clear this part of memory when they change display modes, but it is possible to store data as text and display it as graphics, or vice-versa. All you have to do is change the mode switch, described in the section "Display Mode Switching", without changing the display data. This usually produces meaningless jumbles on the display, but some programs have used this technique to good advantage for producing complex low-resolution graphics displays quickly.

#### *High-resolution Graphics*

In the high-resolution graphics mode, the Apple IIe displays an array of colored dots in 192 rows and 280 columns. The colors available are black, white, purple, green, orange, and blue, although the colors of the individual dots are limited, as described below. Adjacent dots of the same color merge to form a larger colored area.

Data for the high-resolution graphics displays are stored in either of two 8192-byte areas in memory. These areas are called high-resolution Page 1 and Page 2; think of them as buffers where you can put data to be displayed. Normally, your programs will use the features of some high-level language to draw graphics dots, lines, and shapes to display; this section describes the way the resulting graphics data are stored in the Apple IIe's memory.

The Apple IIe high-resolution graphics display is bit-mapped: each dot on the screen corresponds to a bit in the Apple IIe's memory. The seven low-order bits of each display byte control a row of seven adjacent dots on the screen, and forty adjacent bytes in memory control a row of 280 (7 times 40) dots. The least significant bit of each byte is displayed as the leftmost dot in a row of seven, followed by the second-least significant bit, and so on, as shown in Figure 2-4. The eighth bit (the most significant) of each byte is not displayed; it selects one of two color sets, as described below.

On a black-and-white monitor, there is a simple correspondence between bits in memory and dots on the screen. A dot is white if the bit controlling it is on (1), and the dot is black if the bit is off (0). On a black-and-white television set, pairs of dots blur together; alternating black and white dots merge to a continuous grey.

On an NTSC color monitor or a color television set, a dot whose controlling bit is off (0) is black. If the bit is on, the dot will be white or a color, depending on its position, the dots on either side, and the setting of the high-order bit of the byte. Call the left-most column of dots column zero, and assume (for the moment) that the high-order bits of all the data bytes are off (0). If the bits that control them are on, dots in even-numbered columns, 0, 2, 4, and so forth, are purple, and dots in odd-numbered columns are green — but only if the dots on either side are black. If two adjacent dots are both on, they are both white.

You select the other two colors, blue and orange, by turning the high-order bit (bit 7) of a data byte on (1). The colored dots controlled by a byte with the high-order bit on are either blue or orange: the dots in even-numbered columns are blue, and the dots in odd-numbered columns are orange — again, only if the dots on either side are black. Within each horizontal line of seven dots controlled by a single byte, you can have black, white, and

one pair of colors. To change the color of any dot to one of the other pair of colors, you must change the high-order bit of its byte, which affects the colors of all seven dots controlled by the byte.

In other words, high-resolution graphics displayed on a color monitor or television set are made up of colored dots, according to the following rules:

- Dots in even columns can be black, purple, or blue.
- Dots in odd columns can be black, green, or orange.
- If adjacent dots in a row are both on, they are both white.
- The colors in each row of seven dots controlled by a single byte are either purple and green, or blue and orange, depending on whether the high-order bit is off (0) or on (1).

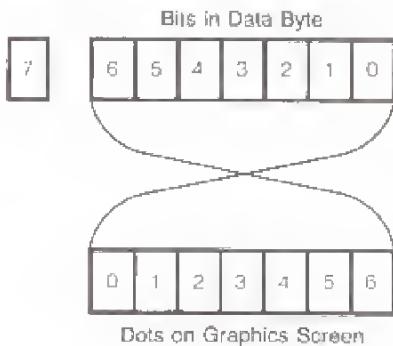
These rules are summarized in Table 2-8. The blacks and whites are numbered to remind you that the high-order bit is different.

**Table 2-8** High-resolution Graphics Colors

Colors may vary, depending on the adjustment of the monitor or television set.

Bits 0-6	Bit 7 Off	Bit 7 On
Adjacent columns off	Black 1	Black 2
Even columns on	Purple	Blue
Odd columns on	Green	Orange
Adjacent columns on	White 1	White 2

**Figure 2-4** High-resolution Display Bits



The peculiar behavior of the high-resolution colors reflects the way NTSC color television works. The dots that make up the Apple IIe video signal are spaced to coincide with the frequency of the color subcarrier used in the NTSC system. Alternating black and white dots at this spacing cause a color monitor or TV set to produce color, but two or more white dots together do not. For more details about the way the Apple IIe produces color on a TV set, see Chapter 7. For information about the way NTSC color television works, see the magazine articles listed in the bibliography.

## Display Pages

The Apple IIe generates its video displays using data stored in specific areas in memory. These areas, called display pages, serve as buffers where your programs can put data to be displayed. Each byte in a display buffer controls an object at a certain location on the display. In text mode, the object is a single character; in low-resolution graphics, the object is two stacked colored blocks; and in high-resolution mode, it is a line of seven adjacent dots.

The 40-column-text and low-resolution-graphics modes use two display pages of 1024 bytes each. These are called Text Page 1 and Text Page 2, and they are located at 1024-2047 (hexadecimal \$400-\$7FF) and 2048-3071 (\$800-\$BFF) in main memory. Normally, only Page 1 is used, but you can put text or graphics data into Page 2 and switch displays instantly. Either page can be displayed as 40-column text, low-resolution graphics, or mixed-mode (four rows of text at the bottom of a graphics display).

The 80-column text mode displays twice as much data as the 40-column mode — 1920 bytes — but it cannot switch pages. The 80-column text display uses a combination page made up of Text Page 1 in main memory plus another page in auxiliary memory located on the 80-column text card. This additional memory is NOT the same as Text Page 2 — in fact, it occupies the same address space as Text Page 1, and there is a special soft switch that enables you to store data into it (see the section "Display Mode Switching", below). The built-in firmware I/O routines described in Chapter 3 take care of this extra addressing automatically; that is one reason to use those routines for all your normal text output.

The high-resolution graphics mode also has two display pages, but each page is 8192 bytes long. In the 40-column text and low-resolution graphics modes each byte controls a display area seven dots wide by eight dots high. In high-resolution graphics mode each byte controls an area seven dots wide by one dot high. Thus, a high-resolution display requires eight times as much data storage, as shown in Table 2-9.

**Table 2-9** Video Display Page Locations

\*Note: 80-column mode uses the 1024-byte page-1 locations in both main and auxiliary memory. The PAGE2 switch is used to select one or the other for storing data (see the section "Display Mode Switching").

Display mode	Page	Lowest Address		Highest Address	
40-column Text, Low-resolution Graphics	1	\$400	1024	\$7FF	2047
	2	\$800	2048	\$BFF	3071
80-column Text	1*	\$400	1024	\$7FF	2047
High-resolution Graphics	1	\$2000	8192	\$3FFF	16383
	2	\$4000	16384	\$5FFF	24575

### Display Mode Switching

You select the display mode that is appropriate for your application by reading or writing to a reserved memory location called a soft switch. In the Apple IIe, most soft switches have three memory locations reserved for them: one for turning the switch on, one for turning it off, and one for reading the current state of the switch.

Table 2-10 shows the reserved locations for the soft switches that control the different display modes. For example, to switch from mixed-mode to full-screen graphics in an assembly-language program, you could use the instruction:

STA \$C052

To do this in a BASIC program, you could use the instruction:

POKE 49234,0

The table gives the switch locations in three forms: hexadecimal, decimal, and negative decimal. You can use the hexadecimal values in your machine-language programs. Use the decimal values in PEEK or POKE commands in Applesoft BASIC; the negative values are for Integer BASIC.

You may not need to deal with these functions by reading and writing directly to the memory locations in this table. Many of the functions shown here are selected automatically if you use the display routines in the various high-level languages on the Apple IIe.

Some of the soft switches in Table 2-10 are marked read or write. Those soft switches share their locations with the keyboard data and strobe functions. In the original Apple II, memory locations from \$C000 to \$C01F (49152 to 49183) were used only for the keyboard data and strobe functions. In the Apple IIe, these locations are used the same way, but only when you *read* to get data and *write* to clear the strobe. To perform the function shown in the table, use the operation listed there. Soft switches that are not marked may be accessed by either a read or a write. When writing to a soft switch, it doesn't matter what value you write; the action occurs when you address the location, and the value is ignored.

**Table 2-10** Display Soft Switches

- (1) This mode is only effective when graphics-mode switch is ON.
- (2) This switch has a different function when the 80-column text card's auxiliary text page is enabled for writing. Refer to the next section, "Addressing Display Pages Directly".
- (3) This switch changes the function of the PAGE2 switch for addressing the auxiliary text memory on the extended 80-column text card. The next section describes how to do this.
- (4) Reading this location returns the state of the vertical blanking signal VBL. The function of VBL is described in Chapter 7 in the section "Video Output Signals."

Name	Function	Hex	Location Decimal	Notes
ALTCHARSET	Alternate char. set on	\$C00F	49167	-16369 Write
	Alternate char. set off	\$C00E	49166	-16370 Write
	Read ALTCHARSET switch	\$C01E	49182	-16354 Read
TEXT	Text mode on	\$C051	49233	-16303
	Text mode off (graphics)	\$C050	49232	-16304
	Read TEXT switch	\$C01A	49178	-16358 Read
MIXED	Mixed-mode on	\$C053	49235	-16301 1
	Mixed-mode off	\$C052	49234	-16302 1
	Read MIXED switch	\$C01B	49179	-16357 Read
PAGE2	Page 2 on	\$C055	49237	-16299 2
	Page 2 off (Page 1)	\$C054	49236	-16300 2
	Read PAGE2 switch	\$C01C	49180	-16356 Read
HIRES	Hi-res mode on	\$C057	49239	-16297 1
	Hi-res mode off	\$C056	49238	-16298 1
	Read HIRES switch	\$C01D	49181	-16355 Read
80COL	80-column display on	\$C00D	49165	16371 Write
	80-column display off	\$C00C	49164	-16372 Write
	Read 80COL switch	\$C01F	49183	-16353 Read
80STORE	Store in auxiliary memory	\$C001	49153	-16383 Write, 3
	Store in main memory	\$C000	49152	-16384 Write, 3
	Read 80STORE switch	\$C018	49176	-16360 Read
VBL	Read vertical blanking	\$C019	49177	-16359 Read, 4

Any time you read a soft switch, you get a byte of data. However, the only information the byte contains is the state of the switch, and this occupies only one bit — bit 7, the high-order bit. The other bits in the byte are unpredictable. If you are programming in machine language, the switch setting is the sign bit; as soon as you read the byte, you can do a Branch Plus if the switch is off, or Branch Minus if the switch is on.

If you read a soft-switch from a BASIC program, you get a value between 0 and 255. Bit 7 has a value of 128, so if the switch is on, the value will be equal to or greater than 128; if the switch is off, the value will be less than 128.

---

### ***Addressing Display Pages Directly***

Before you decide to use the display pages directly, consider the alternatives. Most high-level languages enable you to write statements that control the text and graphics displays. Similarly, if you are programming in assembly language, you may be able to use the display features of the built-in I/O firmware. You should store directly into display memory only if the existing programs can't meet your requirements.

The display memory maps are shown in Figures 2-5, 2-6, 2-7, and 2-8. All of the different display modes use the same basic addressing scheme: characters or graphics bytes are stored as rows of 40 contiguous bytes, but the rows themselves are not stored at locations corresponding to their locations on the display. Instead, the display address is transformed so that three rows that are eight rows apart on the display are grouped together and stored in the first 120 locations of each block of 128 bytes (\$80 hexadecimal). By folding the display data into memory this way, the Apple IIe, like the Apple II, stores all 960 characters of displayed text within 1K bytes of memory. For a full description of the way the Apple IIe handles its display memory, refer to the section "Display Memory Addressing" in Chapter 7.

The high-resolution graphics display is stored in much the same way as text, but there are eight times as many bytes to store, because eight rows of dots occupy the same space on the display as one row of characters. The subset consisting of all the first rows from the groups of eight is stored in the first 1024 bytes of the high-resolution display page. The subset consisting of all the second rows from the groups of eight is stored in the second 1024 bytes, and so on for a total of 8 times 1024, or

8192 bytes. In other words, each block of 1024 bytes in the high-resolution display page contains one row of dots out of every group of eight rows. The individual rows are stored in sets of three forty-byte rows, the same way as the text display.

All of the display modes except 80-column mode can use either of two display pages. The display maps show addresses only for each Page 1. To obtain addresses for text or low-resolution graphics Page 2, add 1024 (\$400); to obtain addresses for high-resolution Page 2, add 8192 (\$2000).

The 80-column display works a little differently. Half of the data is stored in the normal text Page-1 memory, and the other half is stored in memory on the 80-column text card using the same addresses. The display circuitry fetches bytes from these two memory areas simultaneously and displays them sequentially: first the byte from the 80-column text card memory, then the byte from the main memory. The main memory stores the characters in the odd columns of the display, and the 80-column text card memory stores the characters in the even columns.

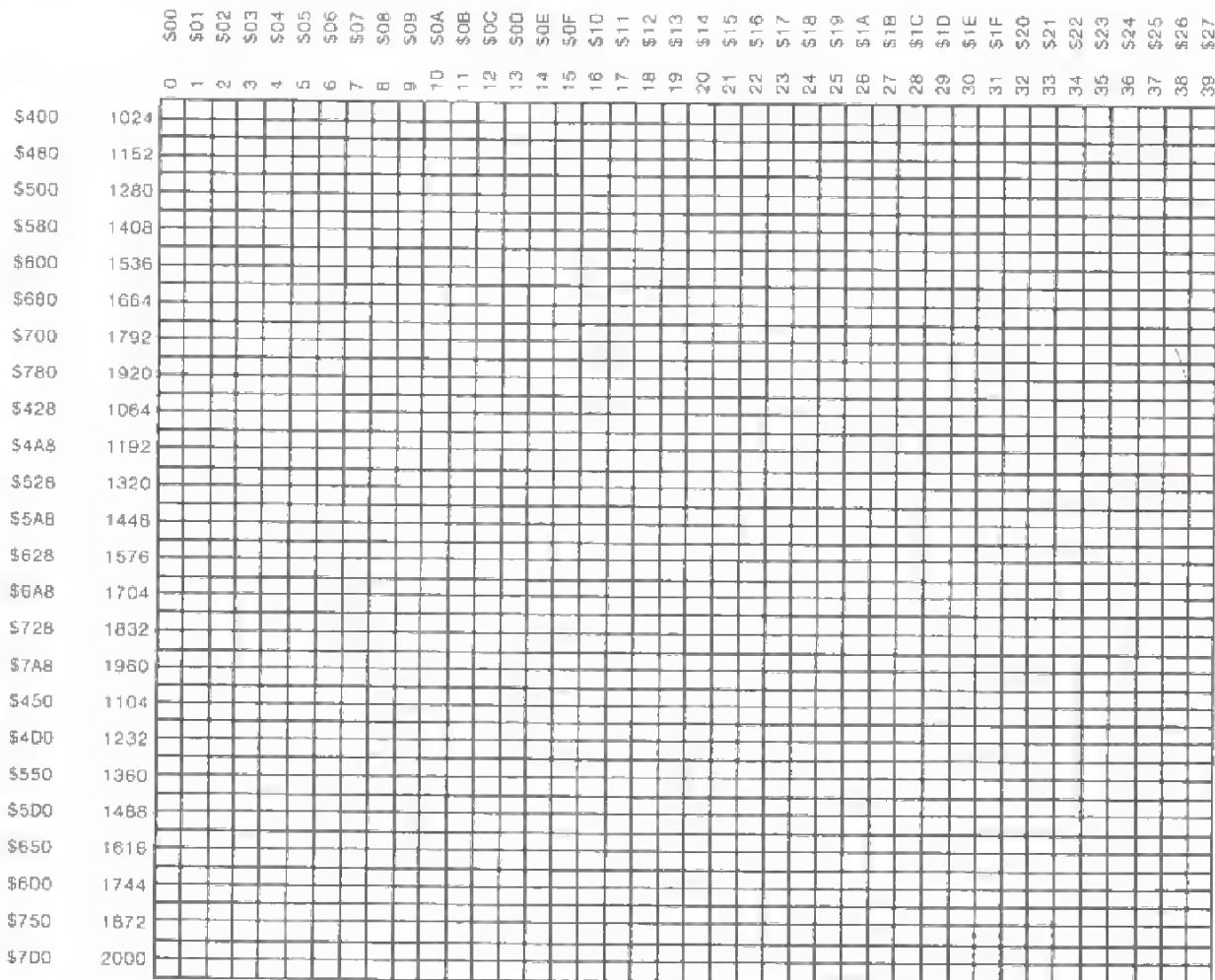
To store display data on the 80-column text card, first turn on the **80STORE** soft switch by writing to location 49153 (hexadecimal \$C001 or complementary -16383). With **80STORE** on, the page-select switch **PAGE2** selects between the portion of the 80-column display stored in Page 1 of main memory and the portion stored in the 80-column text card memory. To select the 80-column text card, turn the **PAGE2** soft switch on by reading or writing at location 49237. For more details about the way the displays are generated, see Chapter 7.

**Figure 2-5** Map of 40-column Text Display

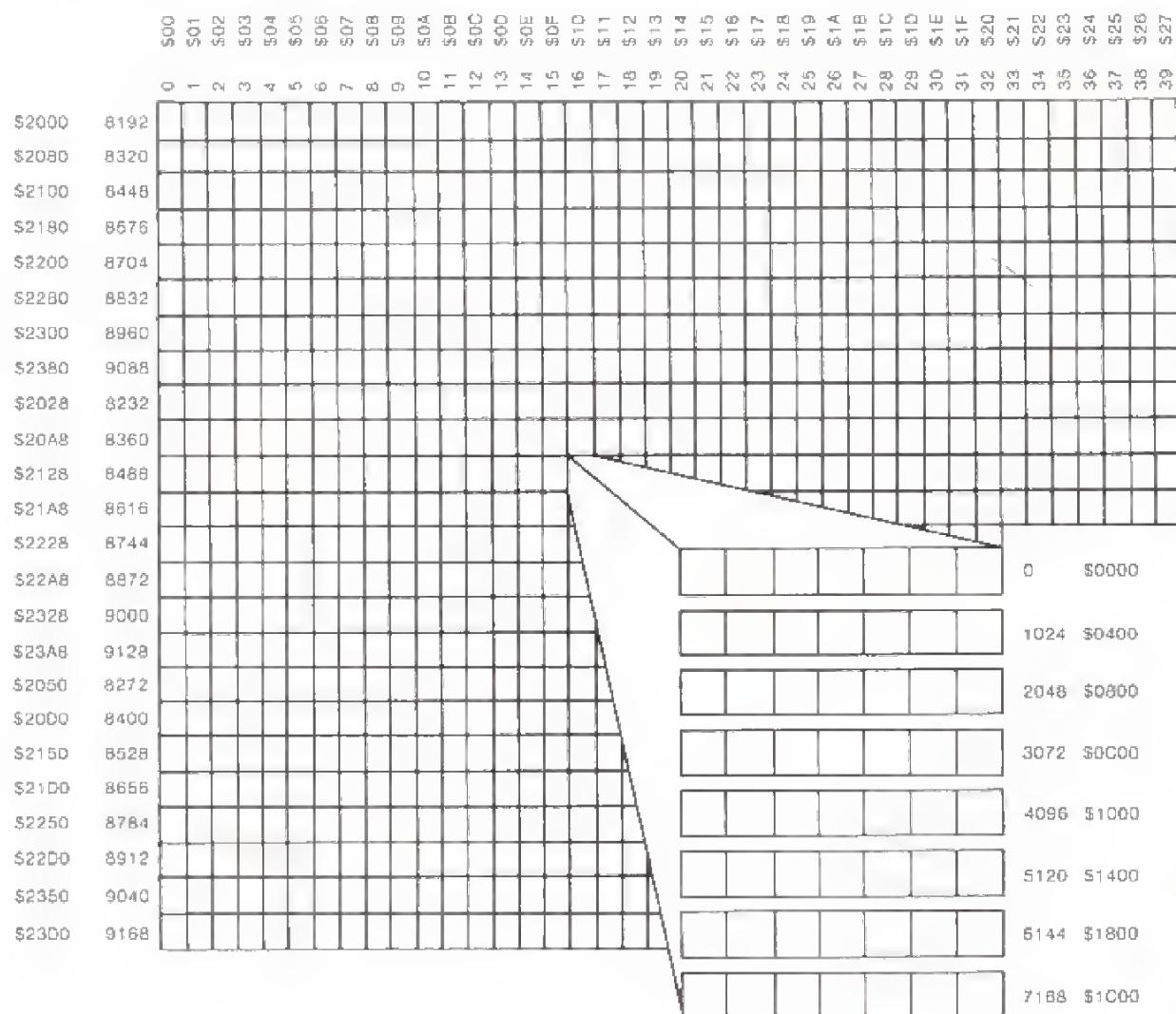
Figure 2-6 Map of 80-column Text Display



**Figure 2-7** Map of Low-resolution Graphics Display



**Figure 2-8** Map of High-resolution Graphics Display



## Secondary Inputs and Outputs

In addition to the primary I/O devices — the keyboard and display — there are several secondary input and output devices in the Apple IIe. These devices are

- The speaker (output)
- Cassette input and output
- Annunciator outputs
- Strobe output
- Switch inputs
- Analog (hand control) inputs

These devices are similar in operation to the soft switches described in the previous section: you control them by reading or writing to dedicated memory locations. Action takes place any time your program reads or writes to one of these locations; information written is ignored.

Some of these devices toggle — change state — each time they are accessed. If you write using an indexed store operation, the Apple IIe's 6502 microprocessor activates the address bus twice during successive clock cycles, causing a device that toggles each time it is addressed to end up back in its original state. For this reason, you should read, rather than write, to such devices.

### The Speaker

The Apple IIe has a small speaker mounted toward the front of the bottom plate. The speaker is connected to a soft switch that toggles; it has two states, off and on, and it changes from one to the other each time it is accessed. Electrical specifications of the speaker circuit appear in Chapter 7.

If you switch the speaker once, it emits a click; to make longer sounds, you access the speaker repeatedly. You should always use a read operation to toggle the speaker. If you write to this soft switch, it switches twice in rapid succession. The resulting pulse is so short that the speaker doesn't have time to respond; it doesn't make a sound.

The soft switch for the speaker uses memory location 49200 (hexadecimal  $\$C030$ ). From Integer BASIC, use the complementary address -16336. You can make various tones and buzzes with the

speaker by using combinations of timing loops in your program. There is also a routine in the built-in firmware to make a beep through the speaker. This routine is called **BELL1**; it is described in Appendix C.

### ***Cassette Input and Output***

There are two miniature phone jacks on the back panel of the Apple IIe. You can use a pair of standard cables with miniature phone plugs to connect an ordinary cassette tape recorder to the Apple IIe and save programs and data on audio cassettes.

The phone jack marked with a picture of an arrow pointing towards a cassette is the output jack. It is connected to a toggled soft switch, like the speaker switch described above. The signal at the phone jack switches from zero to 25 millivolts or from 25 millivolts to zero each time you access the soft switch. Detailed electrical specifications for the cassette input and output are given in Chapter 7.

If you connect a cable from this jack to the microphone input of a cassette tape recorder and switch the recorder to record mode, the signal changes you produce by accessing this soft switch will be recorded on the tape. The cassette output switch uses memory location 49184 (hexadecimal \$C020; complementary value -16352). Like the speaker, this output will toggle twice if you write to it, so you should only use read operations to control the cassette output.

The standard method for writing computer data on audio tapes uses tones with two different pitches to represent the binary states zero and one. To store data, you convert the data into a stream of bits, and convert the bits into the appropriate tones. To save you the trouble of actually programming the tones, and to ensure consistency among all Apple II cassette tapes, there is a built-in routine for producing cassette data output. This routine, called **WRITE**, is described in Appendix C.

The phone jack marked with a picture of an arrow coming from a cassette is the input jack. It accepts a cable from the cassette recorder's earphone jack. The signal from the cassette is 1 volt (peak-to-peak) audio. Each time the instantaneous value of this audio signal changes from positive to negative, or vice-versa, the state of the cassette input circuit changes from zero to one or vice-versa. You can read the state of this circuit at memory location 49248 (hexadecimal \$C060, or complementary decimal -16288).

When you read this location, you get a byte, but only the high-order bit (bit 7) is valid. If you are programming in machine language, this is the sign bit, so you can perform a Branch Plus or Branch Minus immediately after reading this byte. BASIC is too slow to keep up with the audio tones used for data recording on tape, but you don't need to write the program: there is a built-in routine for reading data from a cassette. It is called READ, and it is described in Appendix C.

### ***The Hand Control Connector Signals***

Several inputs are available on a 9-pin D-type miniature connector on the back of the Apple IIe: three one-bit inputs, or switches, and four analog inputs. These signals are also available on the sixteen-pin IC connector on the main circuit board, along with four one-bit outputs and a data strobe. You can access all of these signals from your programs.

Ordinarily, you connect a pair of hand controls to the 9-pin connector. The rotary controls use two analog inputs, and the push-buttons use two one-bit inputs. However, you can also use these inputs and outputs for many other jobs. For example, two analog inputs can be used with a two-axis joystick. Complete electrical specifications of these inputs and outputs are given in Chapter 7; Table 7-18 shows the connector pin numbers.

### ***Annunciator Outputs***

The four one-bit outputs are called annunciators. Each annunciator can be used to turn a lamp, a relay, or some similar electronic device on and off. For electrical specifications of the annunciator outputs, refer to Chapter 7.

Each annunciator is controlled by a soft switch, and each switch uses a pair of memory locations. These memory locations are shown in Table 2-11. Any reference to the first location of a pair turns the corresponding annunciator off; a reference to the second location turns the annunciator on. There is no way to read the state of an annunciator.

**Table 2-11** Announcer Memory Locations

\*Pin numbers given are for the 16-pin IC connector on the circuit board.

No.	Announcer	State	Address		
			Pin*	Decimal	Hex
0	15	off	49240	-16296	\$C058
		on	49241	-16295	\$C059
1	14	off	49242	-16294	\$C05A
		on	49243	-16293	\$C05B
2	13	off	49244	-16292	\$C05C
		on	49245	-16291	\$C05D
3	12	off	49246	-16290	\$C05E
		on	49247	-16289	\$C05F

### Strobe Output

The strobe output is normally at +5 volts, but it drops to zero for about half a microsecond any time its dedicated memory location is accessed. You can use this signal to control functions such as data latching in external devices. If you use this signal, remember that memory is addressed twice by a write; if you need only a single pulse, use a read operation to activate the strobe. The memory location for the strobe signal is 49216 (hexadecimal \$C040 or complementary -16320).

### Switch Inputs

The three one-bit inputs can be connected to the output of another electronic device or to a pushbutton. When you read a byte from one of these locations, only the high-order bit — bit 7 — is valid information; the rest of the byte is undefined. From machine language, you can do a Branch Plus or Branch Minus on the state of bit 7. From BASIC, you read the switch with a PEEK and compare the value with 128. If the value is 128 or greater, the switch is on.

The memory locations for these switches are 49249 through 49251 (hexadecimal \$C061 through \$C063, or complementary -16287 through -16285), as shown in Table 2-12. Switch 0 and switch 1 are permanently connected to the **OPEN-APPLE** and **SOLID-APPLE** keys on the keyboard; these are the ones normally connected to the buttons on the hand controls. Some software for the older models of the Apple II uses the third switch, switch

2, as a way of detecting the shift key. This technique requires a hardware modification known as the single-wire shift-key mod.

To perform this modification on your Apple IIe, all you have to do is solder across the broken circle labelled X6 on the main circuit board. Early production Apple IIes, identified by a circuit board part number ending in -A, have the shift-key mod active; you can remove it by breaking the circuit at X6. Remember to turn off the power before changing anything inside the Apple IIe. Also remember that changes such as this are at your own risk and may void the warranty.

#### Warning

If you make the shift-key modification and connect a joystick or other hand control that uses switch 2, you must be careful never to close the switch and press the **SHIFT** key at the same time: doing this produces a short circuit that causes the power supply to turn off. When this happens, any programs or data in the computer's internal memory are lost.

#### Analog Inputs

The four analog inputs are designed for use with 150K ohm variable resistors or potentiometers. The variable resistance is connected between the +5V supply and each input, so that it makes up part of a timing circuit (refer to Chapter 7 for details). The circuit changes state when its time constant has elapsed, and the time constant varies as the resistance varies. Your program can measure this time by counting in a loop until the circuit changes state, or times out.

Before a program can read the analog inputs, it must first reset the timing circuits. Accessing memory location 49264 (hexadecimal \$C070 or complementary -16272) does this. As soon as you reset the timing circuits, the high bits of the bytes at locations 49252 through 49255 (hexadecimal \$C064 through \$C067 or complementary -16284 through -16281) are set to one. If you PEEK at them from BASIC, the values will be 128 or greater. Within about 3 milliseconds, these bits will change back to zero — byte values less than 128 — and remain there until you reset the timing circuits again. The exact time each of the four bits remains high is directly proportional to the resistance connected to the corresponding input. If these inputs are open — no resistances are connected — the corresponding bits may remain high indefinitely.

To read the analog inputs from machine language, you can use a program loop that resets the timers and then increments a counter until the bit at the appropriate memory location changes

to zero, or you can use the built-in routine. It is called PREAD, and it is described in Appendix C. BASIC and other high-level languages also include convenient means of reading the analog inputs: refer to your language manuals.

### Summary of Secondary I/O Locations

Table 2-12 shows the memory locations for all of the built-in I/O devices except the keyboard and display. As explained above, some soft switches should only be accessed by means of read operations; those switches are marked.

**Table 2-12** Secondary I/O Memory Locations

For connector identification and pin numbers, refer to Tables 7-17 and 7-18.

Function	Address		Notes
	Decimal	Hex	
Speaker	49200 -16336	\$C030	Read
Cassette Out	49184 -16352	\$C020	Read
Cassette In	49248 -16288	\$C060	Read
Annunciator 0 On	49241 -16295	\$C059	
Annunciator 0 Off	49240 -16296	\$C058	
Annunciator 1 On	49243 -16293	\$C05B	
Annunciator 1 Off	49242 -16294	\$C05A	
Annunciator 2 On	49245 -16291	\$C05D	
Annunciator 2 Off	49244 -16292	\$C05C	
Annunciator 3 On	49247 -16289	\$C05F	
Annunciator 3 Off	49246 -16290	\$C05E	
Strobe Output	49216 -16320	\$C040	Read
Switch Input 0 ( <b>[OPEN-APPLE]</b> key)	49249 -16287	\$C061	Read
Switch Input 1 ( <b>[SOLID-APPLE]</b> key)	49250 -16286	\$C062	Read
Switch Input 2	49251 -16285	\$C063	Read
Analog Input Reset	49264 -16272	\$C070	
Analog Input 0	49252 -16284	\$C064	Read
Analog Input 1	49253 -16283	\$C065	Read
Analog Input 2	49254 -16282	\$C066	Read
Analog Input 3	49255 -16281	\$C067	Read

## ***Built-in I/O Firmware***

---

- 44 Using the I/O Subroutines
- 44 Apple II Compatibility
- 45 The 80-column Firmware
- 47 The Old Monitor
- 47 The Standard I/O Links
- 48 Standard Output Features
- 48 COUT Output Subroutine
- 50 Control Characters with COUT1
- 50 The Stop-List Feature
- 50 The Text Window
- 52 Inverse and Flashing Text
- 53 Standard Input Features
- 53 RDKEY Input Subroutine
- 54 KEYIN Input Subroutine
- 55 Escape Codes with KEYIN
- 56 Cursor Motion in Escape Mode
- 56 GETLN Input Subroutine
- 58 Editing with GETLN
- 58 Cancel Line
- 58 Backspace
- 58 Retype



## Built-in I/O Firmware

The **Monitor**, or System Monitor, is a computer program that is used to operate the computer at the machine level.

Almost every program on the Apple IIe takes input from the keyboard and sends output to the display. The *Monitor* and the Applesoft and Integer BASICs do this by means of standard I/O subroutines that are built into the Apple IIe's firmware. Many applications programs also use the standard I/O subroutines, but programs written in Pascal do not; Pascal has its own I/O subroutines.

This chapter describes the features of these subroutines as they are used by the *Monitor* and by the BASIC interpreters, and tells you how to use the standard subroutines in your assembly-language programs.

High-level languages already include convenient methods for handling most of the functions described in this chapter. You should not need to use the standard I/O subroutines in your programs unless you are programming in assembly language.

Table 3-1 Standard I/O Subroutines

Subroutine Name	Location	Description
COUT	\$FDED	Character Out: sends a character to the display.
RDKEY	\$FD0C	Read Key: displays the blinking cursor; goes to the standard input routine, normally KEYIN.
KEYIN	\$FD1B	Key In: with 80-column firmware active, displays checkerboard cursor. Accepts a character from the keyboard.
GETLN	\$FD6A	Get Line: displays the prompt character; accepts a sequence of characters by means of RDKEY.

The standard I/O subroutines listed in Table 3-1 are fully described in this chapter. The Apple IIe firmware also contains many other subroutines that you might find useful. Those subroutines are described in Appendix C. Two of the built-in subroutines, AUXMOVE and XFER, can help you use the optional auxiliary memory; those subroutines are described in Chapter 4.

## Using the I/O Subroutines

Before you use the standard I/O subroutines, you should understand a little about the way they are used. The Apple IIe firmware operates differently with different options such as the 80-column text card. This section describes general situations that affect the operation of the standard I/O subroutines. Specific instances are described in the sections devoted to the individual subroutines.

### Apple II Compatibility

Compared to older Apple II models, the Apple IIe has some additional keyboard and display features. To run programs that were written for the older models, you can make the Apple IIe resemble an Apple II Plus by turning those features off. The features that you can turn off and on to put the Apple IIe into and out of Apple II mode are listed in Table 3-2.

Table 3-2 Apple II Mode

	Apple IIe	Apple II Mode
Keyboard:	Uppercase and lowercase	Uppercase only
Display Characters:	Inverse and normal only	Flashing, inverse, and normal
Display size:	40-column; also 80-column, with optional card	40-column only

If the Apple IIe does not have an 80-column text card installed in the auxiliary slot, it is almost in Apple II mode as soon as you turn it on or reset it. One exception is the keyboard, which is both uppercase and lowercase. To be compatible with older software, you have to switch the Apple IIe keyboard to uppercase by pressing the **CAPS LOCK** key.

Statements in Applesoft and Integer BASIC must be typed in uppercase letters. **CAPS LOCK** will take care of this, but it makes it inconvenient to use lowercase letters in PRINT statements. If the 80-column firmware is active (see below), you can use uppercase-restrict mode, which forces typed letters to uppercase except inside quotation marks (see Table 3-6).

Another feature that is different on the Apple IIe is the displayed character set. Older Apple IIs display only uppercase characters, but they display them three ways: normal, inverse, and flashing. The Apple IIe can display uppercase characters all three ways, and it can display lowercase characters in the normal way. This combination is called the *primary character set*. When the Apple IIe is first turned on or reset, it displays the primary character set.

The Apple IIe has another character set, called the *alternate character set*, that displays a full set of normal and inverse uppercase and lowercase characters, but can't display flashing characters. The primary and alternate character sets are described in Chapter 2. You can switch character sets at any time by means of the ALTCHARSET soft switch, also described in Chapter 2.

#### ***The 80-column Firmware***

There are a few features that are normally available only with the optional 80-column display. These features are identified in Tables 3-3a and 3-3b and Table 3-6. The firmware that supports these features is built into the Apple IIe, but it is normally active only if an 80-column text card is installed in the auxiliary slot.

When you turn on power or reset the Apple IIe, the 80-column firmware is inactive and the Apple IIe displays the primary character set, even if an 80-column text card is installed. When you activate the 80-column firmware as described below, it switches to the alternate character set.

The built-in 80-column firmware is implemented as if it were installed in expansion slot 3. Programs written for older Apple IIs with 80-column display cards installed in slot 3 will run properly on an Apple IIe with an 80-column text card.

If the Apple IIe has an 80-column text card and you want to use the 80-column display, you can activate the built-in firmware from BASIC by typing

**PR#3**

To activate the 80-column firmware from the Monitor, type 3 and press [CONTROL]-P. Notice that this is the same procedure you use to activate a card in expansion slot 3. Any auxiliary card installed in the auxiliary slot takes precedence over a card installed in expansion slot 3: see the section "Switching I/O Memory" in Chapter 6 for details.

Even though you activated the 80-column firmware by typing PR#3, you should never deactivate it by typing PR#0, because that just disconnects the firmware, leaving several soft switches still set for 80-column operation. Instead, type the sequence **ESC** [CONTROL]-Q (see Table 3-6).

If there is no 80-column text card in your Apple IIe, you can still activate the 80-column firmware and use it with a 40-column display. First, set the **INTC3ROM** soft-switch located at \$C00A (49162); this switch is described in Chapter 6 in the section "Switching I/O Memory". Then type PR#3 to transfer control to the firmware.

When the 80-column firmware is active without a card in the auxiliary slot, it does not work quite the same as it does with a card. The functions that clear the display (CLREOL, CLEOLZ, CLREOP, and HOME) work as if the firmware were inactive: they always clear to black, even in inverse format. Also, interrupts are locked out throughout long operations such as clearing the display. With a card installed, the firmware enables interrupts periodically during these long operations.

#### **Warning**

If you do not have either an 80-column text card in the auxiliary slot or a terminal card of some kind in expansion slot 3, don't try to activate the firmware by simply typing PR#3. Typing PR#3 with no card installed transfers control to the empty connector, with unpredictable results.

Programs activate the 80-column firmware by transferring control to address \$C300. If there is no card in the auxiliary slot, you must set the **INTC3ROM** soft switch first. To deactivate the 80-column firmware from a program, write a [CONTROL]-U character via subroutine **COUT**.

### *The Old Monitor*

The older model Apple IIs and Apple II Pluses included a different version of the System Monitor. It had the same standard I/O subroutines, but a few of their features were different; for example, there were no arrow keys for cursor motion. When you start the Apple IIe with a DOS or BASIC disk and it loads Integer BASIC into the bank-switched area in RAM, it loads the old Monitor (sometimes called the Autostart Monitor) along with it. When you type 1NT from Applesoft to activate Integer BASIC, you also activate this copy of the old Monitor, which remains active until you either type FP to switch back to Applesoft, which uses the new Monitor in ROM, or type

PR#3

to activate the 80-column firmware. Part of the firmware's initialization procedure checks to see which version of the Monitor is in RAM. If it finds the old Monitor, it replaces it with a copy of the new Monitor from ROM. After the firmware has copied the new Monitor into RAM, it remains there until the next time you start up the system.

---

### *The Standard I/O Links*

When you call one of the character I/O subroutines (COUT and RDKEY), the first thing that happens is an indirect jump to an address stored in programmable memory. Memory locations used for transferring control to other subroutines are sometimes called vectors; in this manual, the locations used for transferring control to the I/O subroutines are called the *I/O links*. In a Apple IIe running without a Disk Operating System, each I/O link is normally the address of the body of the subroutine (COUT1 or KEYIN). If a Disk Operating System (DOS) is running, one or both of these links hold the addresses of the corresponding DOS I/O routines instead. (DOS maintains its own links to the standard I/O subroutines.)

By calling the I/O subroutines that jump to the link addresses instead of calling the standard subroutines directly, you ensure that your program will work properly in conjunction with other software, such as DOS or a printer driver, that changes one or both of the I/O links. For the purposes of this chapter, we shall assume that the I/O links contain the addresses of the standard I/O subroutines COUT1 and KEYIN. For more information about the I/O links, see the section "Changing the Standard I/O Links" in Chapter 6.

## Standard Output Features

The standard output routine is named `COUT`, pronounced C-out, which stands for character out. `COUT` normally calls `CDUT1`, which sends one character to the display, advances the cursor position, and scrolls the display when necessary. `CDUT1` restricts its use of the display to an active area called the text window, described below.

### `COUT` Output Subroutine

Your program makes a subroutine call to `$FDED` with a character in the accumulator. `COUT` then passes control via the output link `CSW` to the current output, normally `CDUT1`, which takes the character in the accumulator and writes it out. If the accumulator

**Table 3.3a** Control Characters with `CDUT1`.

- (1) Only available when 80-column firmware is active.
- (2) Only works from the keyboard.
- (3) Doesn't work from the keyboard.

Control Character	ASCII Name	Apple IIe Name	Action Taken by <code>COUT1</code>	Notes
<code>CONTROL</code> - G	{BEL}	bell	Produces a 1000 Hz tone for 0.1 second.	
<code>CONTROL</code> - H	(BS)	backspace	Moves cursor position one space to the left; from left edge of window, moves to right end of line above.	
<code>CONTROL</code> - J	(LF)	line feed	Moves cursor position down to next line in window; scrolls if needed.	
<code>CONTROL</code> - K	(VT)	clear EOS	Clears from cursor position to the end of the window.	1
<code>CONTROL</code> - L	(FF)	clear	Moves cursor position to upper-left corner of window and clears window.	1
<code>CONTROL</code> - M	(CR)	return	Moves cursor position to left end of next line in window; scrolls if needed.	
<code>CONTROL</code> - N	(SO)	normal	Sets display format normal.	1, 3
<code>CONTROL</code> - O	(SI)	inverse	Sets display format inverse.	1, 3
<code>CONTROL</code> - Q	(DC1)	40-column	Sets display to 40-column.	1
<code>CONTROL</code> - R	(DC2)	80-column	Sets display to 80-column.	1
<code>CONTROL</code> - S	(DS3)	stop-list	Stops sending characters to the display, until a key is pressed.	1, 2

contains an uppercase or lowercase letter, a number, or a special character, the accumulator contains a control character, `COUT1` either performs one of the special functions described below or ignores the character.

Each time you send a character to `COUT1`, it displays the character at the current cursor position, replacing whatever was there, and then advances the cursor position one space to the right. If the cursor position is already at the right-hand edge of the window, `COUT1` moves it to the left-most position on the next line down. If this would move the cursor position past the end of the last line in the window, `COUT1` scrolls the display up one line and sets the cursor position at the left end of the new bottom line.

**Table 3-3b** Control Characters with `COUT1`, continued

(1) Only available when 80-column firmware is active.  
 (2) `gotoXY` is not supported under BASIC; see the *Apple Pascal Operating System Reference Manual*.

Control Character	ASCII Name	Apple IIe Name	Action Taken by <code>COUT1</code>	Notes
<code>CONTROL</code> - U	(NAK)	quit	Deactivates 80-column firmware, homes cursor, and clears screen.	1
<code>CONTROL</code> - V	(SYN)	scroll	Scrolls the display down one line, leaving the cursor in the current position.	1
<code>CONTROL</code> - W	(ETB)	scroll-up	Scrolls the display up one line, leaving the cursor in the current position.	1
<code>CONTROL</code> - Y	(EM)	home	Moves cursor position to upper-left corner of window (but doesn't clear).	1
<code>CONTROL</code> - Z	(SUB)	clear line	Clears the line the cursor position is on.	1
<code>CONTROL</code> - \	(FS)	fwd. space	Moves cursor position one space to the right; from right edge of window, moves it to left end of line below.	1
<code>CONTROL</code> - I	(GS)	clear EOL	Clears line from cursor position to the right edge of the window.	1
<code>CONTROL</code> - ^	(RS)	gotoXY	Using the next two characters, minus 32, as one-byte X and Y values, moves the cursor position to <code>CH=X, CV=Y</code> .	1, 2

The cursor position is controlled by the values in memory locations 36 and 37 (hexadecimal \$24 and \$25). These locations are named CH, for cursor horizontal, and CV, for cursor vertical. COUT1 does not display a cursor, but the input routines described below do, and they use this cursor position. If some other routine displays a cursor, it will not necessarily put it in the cursor position used by COUT1.

### Control Characters with COUT1

COUT1 does not display control characters. Instead, the control characters listed in Tables 3-3a and 3-3b are used to initiate some action by the firmware. Other control characters are ignored. Most of the functions listed here can also be invoked from the keyboard, either by typing the control character listed or by using the appropriate escape code, as described in the section "Escape Codes with KEYIN". The stop-list function, described separately, can only be invoked from the keyboard.

### The Stop-list Feature

When you are using any program that displays text via COUT1, you can make it stop updating the display by holding down the **CONTROL** key and pressing the S key. Whenever COUT1 gets a carriage return from the program, it checks to see if you have typed a **CONTROL**-S. If you have, COUT1 stops and waits for you to press another key. When you want COUT1 to resume, press another key; COUT1 will send the carriage return it got earlier to the display, then continue normally. The character code of the key you pressed to resume displaying is ignored unless it is a **CONTROL**-C. COUT1 passes **CONTROL**-C back to the program; if it is a BASIC program, this enables you to terminate the program while in stop-list mode.

### The Text Window

After starting up the computer or after a reset, COUT1 uses the entire display. However, you can restrict COUT1's activity to any rectangular portion of the display you wish. The active portion of the display is called the *text window*. COUT1 puts characters only into the window; when it reaches the end of the last line in the window, it scrolls only the contents of the window.

You can set the top, bottom, left side, and width of the text window by storing the appropriate values into four locations in memory. This enables your programs to control the placement of text in the display and to protect other portions of the screen from being written over by new text.

Memory location 32 (hexadecimal \$20) contains the number of the leftmost column in the text window. This number is normally 0, the number of the leftmost column in the display. In a 40-column display, the maximum value for this number is 39 (hexadecimal \$27); in an 80-column display, the maximum value is 79 (hexadecimal \$4F).

Memory location 33 (hexadecimal \$21) holds the width of the text window. For a 40-column display, it is normally 40 (hexadecimal \$28); for an 80-column display, it is normally 80 (hexadecimal \$50). `COUT1` truncates the width to an even value.

#### Warning

Be careful not to let the sum of the window width and the leftmost position in the window exceed the width of the display you are using (40 or 80). If this happens, it is possible for `COUT1` to put characters into memory locations outside the display page, possibly destroying programs or data.

Memory location 34 (hexadecimal \$22) contains the number of the top line of the text window. This is normally 0, the topmost line in the display. Its maximum value is 23 (hexadecimal \$17).

Memory location 35 (hexadecimal \$23) contains the number of the bottom line of the screen, plus 1. It is normally 24 (hexadecimal \$18) for the bottom line of the display. Its minimum value is 1.

#### Warning

Any time you change the boundaries of the text window, you should make sure that the current cursor position (stored at `CH` and `CV`) is inside the new window. If it is outside, it is possible for `COUT1` to put characters into memory locations outside the display page, possibly destroying programs or data.

Table 3-4 Text Window Memory Locations

Window Parameter	Location		Minimum Value:		Normal Values:				Maximum Values:					
	Dec	Hex	Dec	Hex	40col.	60col.	Dec	Hex	40col.	Dec	Hex	80col.	Dec	Hex
Left Edge	32	\$20	0	\$0	0	\$0	0	\$0	39	\$27	79	\$4F		
Width	33	\$21	0	\$0	40	\$28	80	\$50	40	\$28	80	\$50		
Top Edge	34	\$22	0	\$0	0	\$0	0	\$0	23	\$17	23	\$17		
Bottom Edge	35	\$23	1	\$1	24	\$18	24	\$18	24	\$18	24	\$18		

Table 3-4 summarizes the memory locations and the possible values for the window parameters.

### ***Inverse and Flashing Text***

Subroutine COUT1 can display text in normal format, inverse format, or, with some restrictions, flashing format. The display format for any character in the display depends on two things: the character set being used at the moment, and the setting of the two high-order bits of the character's byte in the display memory.

As it sends your text characters to the display, COUT1 sets the high-order bits according to the value stored at memory location 50 (hexadecimal \$32). If that value is 255 (hexadecimal \$FF), COUT1 sets the characters to display in normal format; if the value is 63 (hexadecimal \$3F), COUT1 sets the characters to inverse format. If the value is 127 (hexadecimal \$7F) and if you have selected the primary character set, the characters will be displayed in flashing format. Note that flashing format is not available in the alternate character set.

To control the display format of the characters, routine COUT1 uses the value at location 50 as a logical mask to force the setting of the two high-order bits of each character byte it puts into the display page. It does this by performing the logical AND function on the data byte and the mask byte. The result byte contains a 0 in any bit that was 0 in the mask. The version of COUT1 in the 80-column firmware changes only the high-order bit of the data.

**Table 3-5** Text Format Control Values

Note: These mask values apply only to the primary character set (see text).

Dec	Hex	Display format
255	\$FF	Normal, uppercase and lowercase
127	\$7F	Flashing, uppercase and symbols
63	\$3F	Inverse, uppercase and lowercase

If the 80-column firmware is inactive and you store a mask value at location \$0 with zeros in its low-order bits, `COUT1` will mask out those bits in your text. As a result, some characters will be transformed into other characters. You should set the mask only to the values given in Table 3-5.

If you set the mask value at location \$0 to 127 (hexadecimal \$7F), the high-order bit of each result byte will be 0, and the characters will be displayed either as lowercase or as flashing, depending on which character set you have selected. Refer to the tables of display character sets in Chapter 2. In the primary character set, the next-highest bit, bit 6, selects flashing format with uppercase characters. With the primary character set you can display lowercase characters in normal format and uppercase characters in normal, inverse, and flashing formats. In the alternate character set, bit 6 selects lowercase or special characters. With the alternate character set you can display uppercase and lowercase characters in normal and inverse formats. Switching between character sets is described in the section "Display Mode Switching" in Chapter 2.

## Standard Input Features

The Apple IIe's firmware includes two different subroutines for reading from the keyboard. One subroutine is named `RDKEY`, which stands for read key. It calls the standard character input subroutine `KEYIN`, which accepts one character at a time from the keyboard. The other subroutine is named `GETLN`, which stands for get line. By making repeated calls to `RDKEY`, `GETLN` accepts a sequence of characters terminated with a carriage return. `GETLN` also provides on-screen editing features: see the section "Editing with `GETLN`".

## RDKEY *Input Subroutine*

A program gets a character from the keyboard by making a subroutine call to RDKEY at memory location \$FD0C. RDKEY sets the character at the cursor position to flash, then passes control via the input link KSW to the current input subroutine, which is normally KEYIN.

RDKEY displays a cursor at the current cursor position, which is immediately to the right of whatever character you last sent to the display (normally by using the COUT routine, described above). The cursor displayed by RDKEY is a flashing version of whatever character happens to be at that position on the screen. It is usually a space, so the cursor appears as a blinking rectangle.

The method RDKEY uses to display a cursor works as it did on the older model Apple IIs, which don't display lowercase characters. If you are running an Integer BASIC program with the 80-column firmware inactive, the RDKEY-style cursor is still appropriate. With lowercase characters or with the alternate character set, this method of displaying a cursor is no longer satisfactory.

## KEYIN *Input Subroutine*

KEYIN is the standard input subroutine. When called, it waits until the user presses a key, then returns with the key code in the accumulator.

The problem of displaying a cursor without using flashing format is handled by KEYIN. If the 80-column firmware is inactive, KEYIN displays a cursor by alternately storing a checkerboard block in the cursor location, then storing the original character, then the checkerboard again. If the firmware is active, KEYIN displays a steady inverse space (rectangle), unless you are in escape mode, when it displays a plus sign (+) in inverse format. (Escape mode is described in the next section.)

KEYIN also generates a random number. While it is waiting for the user to press a key, KEYIN repeatedly increments the 16-bit number in memory locations 78 and 79 (hexadecimal \$4E and \$4F). This number keeps increasing from 0 to 65535, then starts over again at 0. The value of this number changes so rapidly that there is no way to predict what it will be after a key is pressed. A program that reads from the keyboard can use this value as a random number or as a seed for a pseudo-random number routine.

When the user presses a key, KEYIN accepts the character, stops displaying the cursor, and returns to the calling program with the character in the accumulator.

#### Escape Codes with KEYIN

KEYIN has many special functions that you invoke by typing escape codes on the keyboard. An escape code is obtained by pressing the **ESC** key, releasing it, and then pressing some other key, as shown in Table 3-6. The notation in the table — **ESC** *x* — means press the **ESC** key, release it, then press the character that follows.

**Table 3-6** Escape Codes

(1) Old-style cursor-control key: see text.  
(2) Cursor-control key: see text.  
(3) This code functions only when the 80-column firmware is active.

Escape Code	Function	Notes
<b>ESC</b> @	Clears the window and homes the cursor	
<b>ESC</b> A	Moves the cursor up one line	1
<b>ESC</b> B	Moves the cursor right one space	1
<b>ESC</b> C	Moves the cursor left one space	1
<b>ESC</b> D	Moves the cursor down one line	1
<b>ESC</b> E	Clears to the end of the line	
<b>ESC</b> F	Clears to the bottom of the window	
<b>ESC</b> I	Moves the cursor up one line and turns on escape mode	2
<b>ESC</b> ↑	Moves the cursor left one space and turns on escape mode	2
<b>ESC</b> J	Moves the cursor right one space and turns on escape mode	2
<b>ESC</b> ←	Moves the cursor down one line and turns on escape mode	2
<b>ESC</b> K	Turns on restricted-case mode	3
<b>ESC</b> R	Turns off restricted-case mode	3
<b>ESC</b> T	Switches to 40-column mode, homes the cursor, and clears the screen	3
<b>ESC</b> 4	Switches to 80-column mode, homes the cursor, and clears the screen	3
<b>ESC</b> 8	Deactivates the 80-column firmware	3
<b>ESC</b> <b>CONTROL</b> -Q		

Table 3-6 includes three sets of cursor-control keys. The first set consists of the **[ESC]** key followed by A, B, C, or D. The letter keys can be either uppercase or lowercase. These keys are the standard cursor-motion keys on older Apple II models; they are present on the Apple IIe primarily for compatibility with programs written for old machines.

#### ***Cursor Motion in Escape Mode***

The second and third set of cursor-control keys are listed together because they activate escape mode. In escape mode, you can keep using the cursor-motion keys without pressing the **[ESC]** key again. This enables you to perform repeated cursor moves by holding down the appropriate key.

When the 80-column firmware is active, you can tell when KEYIN is in escape mode: it displays a plus sign in inverse format as the cursor. You leave escape mode by typing any key other than a cursor-motion key.

The escape codes with the directional arrow keys are the standard cursor-motion keys on the Apple IIe. The escape codes with the I, J, K, and M keys are the standard cursor-motion keys on the Apple II Plus, and are present on the Apple IIe for compatibility with the Apple II Plus. On the Apple IIe, the escape codes with the I, J, K, and M keys function with either uppercase or lowercase letters.

#### ***GETLN Input Subroutine***

Programs often need strings of characters as input. While it is possible to call RDKEY repeatedly to get several characters from the keyboard, there is a more powerful subroutine you can use. This routine is named GETLN, which stands for get line, and it starts at location \$FD6A. Using repeated calls to RDKEY, GETLN accepts characters from the standard input subroutine — usually KEYIN — and puts them into the input buffer located in the memory page from \$200 to \$2FF. GETLN also provides the user with on-screen editing and control features, described below in the section "Editing with GETLN".

The first thing GETLN does when you call it is display a prompting character, called simply a *prompt*. The prompt indicates to the user that the program is waiting for input. Different programs use different prompt characters, helping to remind the user which program is requesting the input. For example, an INPUT statement in a BASIC program displays a question mark ( ? ) as a prompt.

The prompt characters used by the different programs on the Apple IIe are shown in Table 3-7.

GETLN uses the character stored at memory location (hexadecimal \$33) as the prompt character. In an assembly-language program, you can change the prompt to any character you wish. In BASIC, changing the prompt character has no effect, because both BASIC interpreters and the Monitor restore it each time they request input from the user.

**Table 3-7** Prompt Characters

\*Note: Mini-assembler is available only with Integer BASIC active.

Prompt Character	Program Requesting Input
?	User's BASIC program (INPUT statement)
>	Integer BASIC
	Applesoft BASIC
-	Firmware Monitor
!	Mini-assembler*

As the user types the character string, GETLN sends each character to the standard output routine — normally `CDOUT1` — which displays it at the previous cursor position and puts the cursor at the next available position on the display, usually immediately to the right. As the cursor travels across the display, it indicates the position where the next character will be displayed.

GETLN stores the characters in its buffer, starting at memory location \$200 and using the X register to index the buffer. GETLN continues to accept and display characters until the user presses the [RETURN] key; then it clears the remainder of the line the cursor is on, stores the carriage-return code in the buffer, sends the carriage-return code to the display, and returns to the calling program.

The maximum line-length that GETLN can handle is 255 characters. If the user types more than this, GETLN sends a backslash (\) and a carriage return to the display, cancels the line it has accepted so far, and starts over. To warn the user that the line is getting full, GETLN sounds a bell (tone) at every keypress after the 248th.

In the Apple II and the Apple II Plus, the GETLN routine converts all inputs to uppercase. GETLN in the Apple IIe does not do this, even in Apple II mode. To get uppercase input for BASIC, use the **CAPS LOCK** key or switch to restricted-case mode using the escape sequence shown in Table 3-6. With restricted-case active, letters are automatically shifted to uppercase except inside quotation marks.

## **Editing with GETLN**

Subroutine GETLN provides the standard on-screen editing features used by the BASIC interpreters and the Monitor. For an introduction to editing with these features, refer to the *Applesoft Tutorial*. Any program that uses GETLN for reading the keyboard has these features.

### **Cancel Line**

Any time you are typing a line, pressing **CONTROL-X** causes GETLN to cancel the line. GETLN displays a backslash (/) and issues a carriage return, then displays the prompt and waits for you to type a new line. GETLN takes the same action when you type more than 255 characters, as described above.

### **Backspace**

When you press the **LEFT-ARROW** key, GETLN moves its buffer pointer back one space, effectively deleting the last character in its buffer. It also sends a backspace character to routine **COUT**, which moves the display position and the cursor back one space. If you type another character now, it will replace the character you backspaced over, both on the display and in the line buffer. Each time you press the **LEFT-ARROW** key, it moves the cursor left and deletes another character, until you reach the beginning of the line. If you then press the **LEFT-ARROW** key one more time, you have effectively cancelled the line, and GETLN issues a carriage return and displays the prompt.

### **Retype**

The **RIGHT-ARROW** key has a function that is complementary to the backspace function. When you press the **RIGHT-ARROW** key, GETLN picks up the character at the display position just as if it had been typed on the keyboard. You can use this procedure to pick up characters that you have just deleted by backspacing across them. You can use the backspace and retype functions with the cursor-motion functions to edit data on the display (see the earlier section "Cursor Motion in Escape Mode").

## *Memory Organization*

---

- 61 Main Memory Map
- 63 RAM Memory Allocation
- 63 Reserved Memory Pages
- 64 Page Zero
- 64 The 6502 Stack
- 64 The Input Buffer
- 65 Link-address Storage
- 65 The Display Buffers
- 68 Bank-switched Memory
- 69 Setting Bank Switches
- 71 Auxiliary Memory and Firmware
- 73 Memory Mode Switching
- 76 Auxiliary-memory Subroutines
- 77 Moving Data to Auxiliary Memory
- 78 Transferring Control to Auxiliary Memory
- 79 The Reset Routine
- 80 The Cold-start Procedure
- 80 The Warm-start Procedure
- 81 Forced Cold Start
- 81 The Reset Vector
- 83 Automatic Self-test



## *Memory Organization*

The Apple IIe's 6502 microprocessor can address 65,536 (64K) memory locations (K stands for 1024; refer to the glossary). All of the Apple IIe's programmable storage (RAM, for random-access memory), read-only storage (ROM, for read-only memory) and input and output devices are allocated locations in this 64K address space. Some functions share the same addresses — but not at the same time. For information about these shared address spaces, see the section "Bank-switched Memory" in this chapter and the sections "Other Uses of I/O Memory Space" and "Expansion ROM Space" in Chapter 6.

All input and output in the Apple IIe is memory mapped. In this chapter, the I/O memory spaces are described simply as blocks of memory. For details of the built-in I/O features, refer to the descriptions in Chapters 2 and 3. For information about I/O operations with peripheral cards, refer to Chapter 6.

People often refer to the Apple IIe's memory in 256-byte blocks called pages. One reason for this is that a one-byte address counter or index register can specify one of 256 different locations. Thus, page 0 consists of memory locations from 0 to 255 (hexadecimal \$0 to \$FF), inclusive. Page 1 consists of locations 256 to 511 (hexadecimal \$100 to \$1FF — note that the page number is the high-order part of the hexadecimal address). Don't confuse this kind of page with the display buffers in the Apple IIe, which are sometimes referred to as Page 1 and Page 2.

### **Main Memory Map**

The map of the main memory address space in Figure 4-1 shows the functions of the major areas of memory. For more details on the I/O space from 48K to 52K (\$C000 through \$CFFF),

refer to Chapter 2 and Chapter 6; the bank-switched memory in the memory space from 52K to 64K (\$D000 through \$FFFF) is described below.

Figure 4-1 System Memory Map

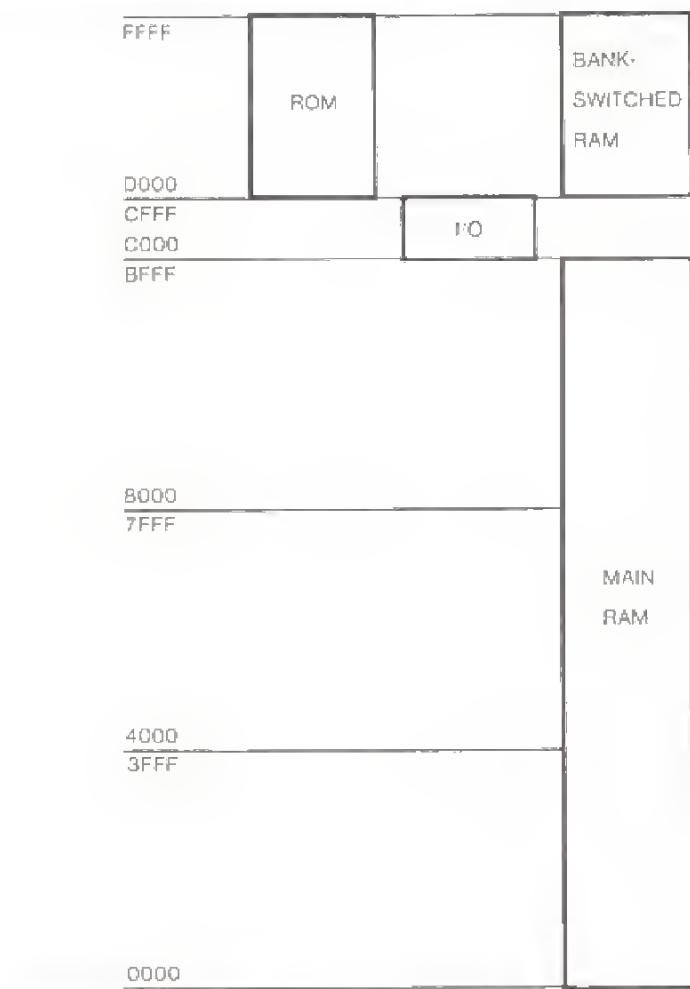
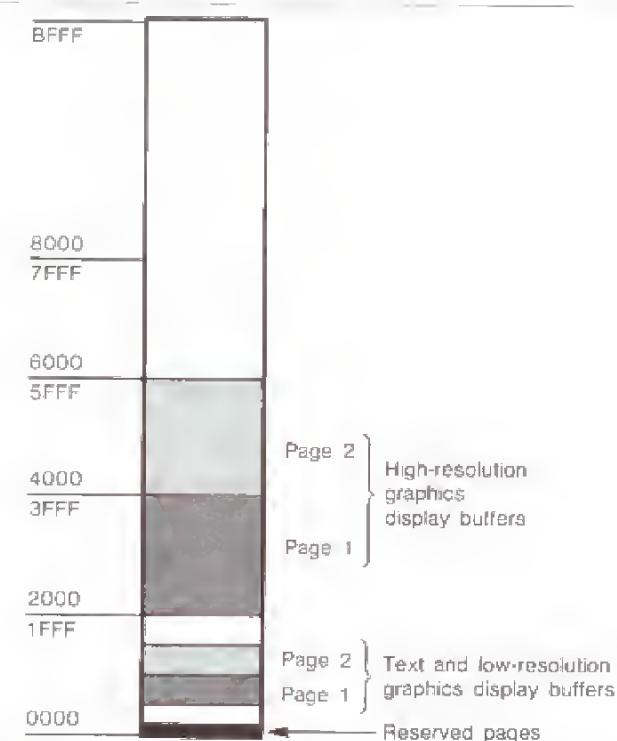


Figure 4-2 RAM Allocation Map



## RAM Memory Allocation

As Figure 4-1 shows, the major portion of the Apple IIe's memory space is allocated to programmable storage (RAM). Figure 4-2 shows the areas allocated to RAM. The main RAM memory extends from location 0 to location 49151 (hex \$BFFF), and occupies pages 0 through 191 (hexadecimal \$BF). There is also RAM storage in the bank-switched space from 53248 to 65535 (hexadecimal \$D000 to \$FFFF), described in a separate section of this chapter, and auxiliary RAM on the 80-column text card or the extended 80-column text card, described in Chapter 6.

### Reserved Memory Pages

Most of the Apple IIe's RAM is available for storing your programs and data. However, a few RAM pages are reserved for the use of the Monitor firmware and the BASIC interpreters. The reserved pages are described below.

The system does not prevent your using these pages, but if you do use them, you must be careful not to disturb the system data they contain, or you will cause the system to malfunction.

### **Page Zero**

Several of the 6502 microprocessor's addressing modes require the use of addresses in page zero, also called zero page. The Monitor, the BASIC interpreters, and DOS all make extensive use of page zero.

To use indirect addressing in your assembly-language programs, you must store base addresses in page zero. At the same time, you must avoid interfering with the other programs that use page zero — the Monitor, the BASIC interpreters, and the Disk Operating Systems. One way to avoid conflicts is to use only those page-zero locations not already used by other programs. Tables 4-1, 4-2, 4-3, and 4-4 show the locations in page zero used by the Monitor, Applesoft BASIC, Integer BASIC, and DOS 3.3.

As you can see from the tables, page zero is pretty well used up, except for a few bytes here and there. It's hard to find more than one or two bytes that aren't used by either BASIC or the Monitor or DOS. Rather than trying to squeeze your data into an unused corner, you may prefer a safer alternative: save the contents of part of page zero, use that part, then restore the previous contents before you pass control to another program.

### **The 6502 Stack**

The 6502 microprocessor uses page 1 as the stack — the place where subroutine return addresses are stored, in first-in, last-out sequence. Many programs also use the stack for temporary storage of the registers (via push and pull operations). You can do the same, but you should use it sparingly. The stack pointer is eight bits long, so the stack can hold only 256 bytes of information at a time. When you store the 257th byte in the stack, the stack pointer repeats itself, or wraps around, so that the new byte replaces the first byte stored, which is now lost. This writing over old data is called stack overflow, and when it happens, the program continues to run normally until the lost information is needed, whereupon the program terminates catastrophically.

### **The Input Buffer**

The GETLN input routine, which is used by the Monitor and the BASIC interpreters, uses page 2 as its keyboard-input buffer. The size of this buffer sets the maximum size of input strings. (Note: Applesoft only uses the first 237 bytes, although it permits

you to type all 256.) If you know that you won't be typing any long input strings, you can store temporary data at the upper end of page 2.

#### ***Link-Address Storage***

The Monitor and DOS 3.3 both use the upper part of page 3 for link addresses or vectors. Table 4-10 shows the part of page 3 the Monitor uses; refer to the *DOS Manual* to see how DOS uses page 3.

BASIC programs sometimes need short machine-language routines. These routines are usually stored in the lower part of page 3.

#### ***The Display Buffers***

The primary text and low-resolution-graphics display buffer occupies memory pages 4 through 7 (locations 1024 through 2047, hexadecimal \$0400 through \$07FF). This entire 1024-byte area is called display Page 1, and it is not usable for program and data storage. There are 64 locations in this area that are not displayed on the screen; these locations are reserved for use by the peripheral cards (see Chapter 6).

Display Page 2, the alternate text and low-resolution-graphics display buffer, occupies memory pages 8 through 11 (locations 2048 through 3071, hexadecimal \$0800 through \$0BFF). Most programs do not use Page 2 for displays, so they can use this area for program or data storage.

The primary high-resolution-graphics display buffer, called high-resolution Page 1, occupies memory pages 32 through 63 (locations 8192 through 16383, hexadecimal \$2000 through \$3FFF). If your program doesn't use high-resolution graphics, this area is usable for programs or data.

High-resolution-graphics Page 2 occupies memory pages 64 through 95 (locations 16384 through 24575, hexadecimal \$4000 through \$5FFF). Most programs use this area for program or data storage.

For more information about the display buffers, see Chapter 2.

Table 4-1 Monitor Zero-page Usage

High Nybble of Address	Low Nybble of Address															
	\$0	\$1	\$2	\$3	\$4	\$5	\$6	\$7	\$8	\$9	\$A	\$B	\$C	\$D	\$E	\$F
\$00																
\$10																•
\$20	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
\$30	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
\$40	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
\$50	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
\$60																
\$70																
\$80																
\$90																
\$A0																
\$B0																
\$C0																
\$D0																
\$E0																
\$F0																

Table 4-2 Applesoft Zero-page Usage

High Nybble of Address	Low Nybble of Address															
	\$0	\$1	\$2	\$3	\$4	\$5	\$6	\$7	\$8	\$9	\$A	\$B	\$C	\$D	\$E	\$F
\$00	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
\$10	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
\$20																
\$30																
\$40																
\$50	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
\$60	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
\$70	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
\$80	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
\$90	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
\$A0	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
\$B0	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
\$C0	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
\$D0	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
\$E0	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
\$F0	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•

Table 4-3 Integer BASIC Zero-page Usage

High Nybble of Address	\$0	\$1	\$2	\$3	\$4	\$5	\$6	\$7	\$8	\$9	\$A	\$B	\$C	\$D	\$E	\$F
\$00																•
\$10																
\$20																
\$30																
\$40																
\$50																
\$60	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
\$70	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
\$80	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
\$90	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
\$A0	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
\$B0	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
\$C0	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
\$D0	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
\$E0																
\$F0															•	•

Table 4-4 DOS 3.3 Zero-page Usage

High Nybble of Address	\$0	\$1	\$2	\$3	\$4	\$5	\$6	\$7	\$8	\$9	\$A	\$B	\$C	\$D	\$E	\$F
\$00																
\$10																
\$20																
\$30																
\$40	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
\$50																
\$60																
\$70																
\$80																
\$90																
\$A0																
\$B0																
\$C0																
\$D0																
\$E0																
\$F0																

## Bank-switched Memory

The memory address space from 52K to 64K (hexadecimal \$D000 through \$FFFF) is doubly allocated: it is used for both ROM and RAM. The 12K bytes of ROM (read-only memory) in this address space contain the Monitor and the Applesoft BASIC interpreter. Alternatively, there are 16K bytes of RAM in this space. The RAM is normally used for storing either the Integer BASIC interpreter or part of the Pascal Operating System (purchased separately).

You may be wondering why this part of memory has such a split personality. Some of the reasons are historical: the Apple IIe is able to run software written for the Apple II and Apple II Plus because it uses this part of memory in the same way they do. It is convenient to have the Applesoft interpreter in ROM, but the Apple IIe, like an Apple II with a language card, is also able to use that address space for other things when Applesoft is not needed.

You may also be wondering how 16K bytes of RAM is mapped into only 12K bytes of address space. The usual answer is that it's done with mirrors, and that isn't a bad analogy: the 4K-byte address space from 52K to 56K (hexadecimal \$D000 through \$DFFF) is used twice.

Switching different blocks of memory into the same address space is called bank switching. There are actually two examples of bank-switching going on here: first, the entire address space from 52K to 64K (\$D000 through \$FFFF) is switched between ROM and RAM, and second, the address space from 52K to 56K (\$D000 to \$DFFF) is switched between two different blocks of RAM.

Figure 4-3 Bank-switched Memory Map



## Setting Bank Switches

You switch banks of memory in the same way you switch other functions in the Apple IIe: by using soft switches. These soft switches do three things: select either RAM or ROM in this memory space; enable or inhibit writing to the RAM (write-protect); and select the first or second 4K-byte bank of RAM in the address space \$D000 to \$DFFF.

### Warning

Do not use these switches without careful planning. Careless switching between RAM and ROM is almost certain to have catastrophic effects on your program.

Table 4-5 shows the addresses of the soft switches for enabling all combinations of reading and writing in this memory space. All of the hexadecimal values of the addresses are of the form \$C08x. Notice that several addresses perform the same function: this is because the soft switches are activated by combinations of address bits. For example, any address of the form \$C08x with a 1 in the low-order bit enables the RAM for writing. Similarly, bit 3 of the address selects which 4K block of RAM to use for the address space \$D000-\$DFFF; if bit 3 is 0, the first bank of RAM is used, and if bit 3 is 1, the second bank is used.

Table 4-5 Bank Select Switches

(1) This switch write-enables RAM and read-enables ROM.  
(2) Two successive reads to this switch enables RAM both for reading and writing.

Switch Address	Write RAM	Read RAM	Read ROM	4K RAM Bank: First	Second	Notes
\$C080		•			•	
\$C081	•		•		•	1
\$C082			•		•	
\$C083	•	•			•	2
\$C084		•			•	
\$C085	•		•		•	1
\$C086			•		•	
\$C087	•	•			•	2
\$C088		•		•		
\$C089	•		•	•		1
\$C08A			•	•		
\$C08B	•	•		•		2
\$C08C		•		•		
\$C08D	•		•	•		1
\$C08E			•	•		
\$C08F	•	•		•		2

When RAM is not enabled for reading, the ROM in this address space is enabled. Even when RAM is not enabled for reading, it can still be written to if it is write-enabled.

When you turn power on or reset the Apple IIe, it initializes the bank switches for reading the ROM and writing the RAM, using the second bank of RAM. Note that this is different from the reset on the Apple II Plus, which didn't affect the bank-switched memory (the language card). On the Apple IIe, you can't use the reset vector to return control to a program in bank-switched memory, as you could on the Apple II Plus.

When you are using Integer BASIC on the Apple IIe, reset works correctly, restarting BASIC with your program intact. This happens because the reset vector transfers control to DOS, and DOS resets the switches for the current version of BASIC.

Note that you can't read one RAM bank and write to the other; if you select either RAM bank for reading, you get that one for writing as well.

You can't read from ROM in part of the bank-switched memory and read from RAM in the rest; specifically, you can't read the Monitor in ROM while reading bank-switched RAM. If you want to use the Monitor firmware with a program in bank-switched RAM, first copy the Monitor from ROM (locations \$F800 through \$FFCB) into lower RAM and then into bank-switched RAM.

To see how to use these switches, look at the following section of an assembly-language program:

```
AD B3 C0 LDA $C083 ; SELECT 2ND 4K BANK
AD B3 C0 LDA $C083 ; READ/WRITE
A9 D0 LDA #$D0 ; BY TWO CONSECUTIVE READS
A9 01 STA BEGIN ; SET UP...
A9 FF LDA #$FF ; ...NEW...
A9 02 STA END ; ...MAIN-MEMORY...
20 97 C9 JSR RAMTST ; ...POINTERS...
; ...FOR 12K BANK
AD B8 C0 LDA $C088 ; SELECT 1ST 4K BANK
20 97 C9 JSR RAMTST ; USE ABOVE POINTERS
AD B3 C0 LDA $C088 ; SELECT 1ST BANK &
; WRITE PROTECT
```

```

A9 80      LDA #$80
E6 10      INC TSTNUM
20 58 C9  JSR WPT$INIT

AD 80 C0  LDA $C080 ; SELECT 2ND BANK &
                INC TSTNUM
A9 01      LDA #PAT12K
20 58 C9  JSR WPT$INIT

AD 88 C0  LDA $C088 ; SELECT 1ST BANK &
                INC RWMODE
E6 0E      INC TSTNUM
E6 10      INC TSTNUM
A9 08      LDA #PAT4K
20 58 C9  JSR WPT$INIT

```

The LDA instruction, which performs a read operation to the specified memory location, is used for setting the soft switches. The unusual sequence of two consecutive LDA instructions performs the two consecutive reads that write-enable this area of RAM; in this case, the data that are read are not used.

## Auxiliary Memory and Firmware

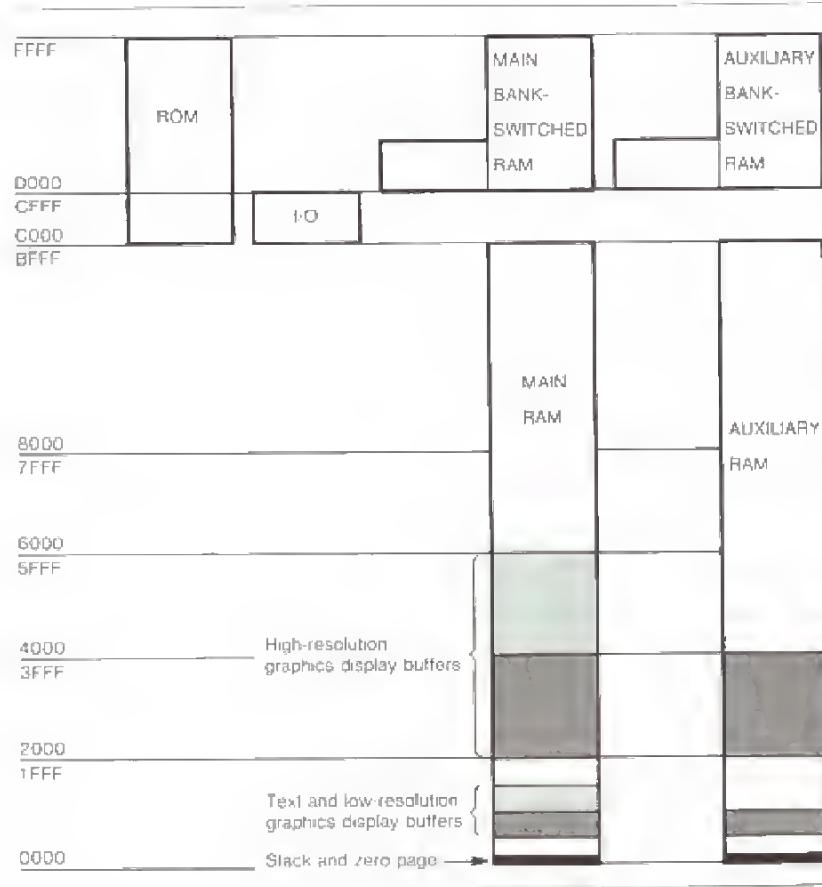
By installing an optional card in the auxiliary slot, you can add more memory to the Apple IIe. One such card is the 80-column text card, which has 1K bytes of additional RAM for expanding the text display from 40 columns to 80 columns.

Another optional card, the extended 80-column text card, has 64K of additional RAM. A 1K-byte area of this memory serves the same purpose as the memory on the 80-column text card: expanding the text display to 80 columns. The other 63K bytes can be used as auxiliary program and data storage. If you use only 40-column displays, the entire 64K bytes is available for programs and data.

### Warning

Do not attempt to use the auxiliary memory from a BASIC program. The BASIC interpreter uses several areas in main RAM, including the stack and the zero page. If you switch to auxiliary memory in these areas, the BASIC interpreter fails and you must reset the system and start over.

Figure 4-4 Memory map with Auxiliary Memory



As you can see by studying the memory map in Figure 4-4, the auxiliary memory is broken into two large sections and one small one. The largest section is switched into the memory address space from \$12 to \$49151 (\$200 through \$BFFF). This space includes the display buffer pages: as described in Chapter 2, space in auxiliary memory is used for one half of the 80-column text display. You can switch to the auxiliary memory for this entire memory space, or you can switch just the display pages: see the section "Memory Mode Switching", below.

If the only reason you are using auxiliary memory is for the 80-column display, note that you can store into the display page in auxiliary memory by using the `BSTORE` and `PAGE2` soft switches described in the section "Display Mode Switching" in Chapter 2.

The other large section of auxiliary memory is switched into the memory address space from 52K to 64K (\$D000 through \$FFFF). This memory space and the switches that control it are described above in the section "Bank-switched Memory". If you use the auxiliary RAM in this space, the soft switches have the same effect on the auxiliary RAM that they do on the main RAM: the bank switching is independent of the auxiliary-RAM switching.

Note that the soft switches for the bank-switched memory, described in the previous section, do not change when you switch to auxiliary RAM. In particular, if ROM is enabled in the bank-switched memory space before you switch to auxiliary memory, the ROM will still be enabled after you switch. Any time you switch the bank-switched section of auxiliary memory in and out, you must also make sure that the bank switches are set properly.

When you switch in the auxiliary RAM in the bank-switched space, you also switch the first two pages, from 0 to 511 (\$0000 through \$01FF). This part of memory contains page zero, which is used for important data and base addresses, and page one, which is the 6502 stack. The stack and zero page are switched this way so that system software running in the bank-switched memory space can maintain its own stack and zero page while it manipulates the 48K address space (from \$0200 to \$BFFF) in either main memory or auxiliary memory.

---

### **Memory Mode Switching**

Switching the 48K section of memory is performed by two soft switches: the switch named RAMRD selects main or auxiliary memory for reading, and the one named RAMWRT selects main or auxiliary memory for writing. As shown in Table 4-6, each switch has a pair of memory locations dedicated to it, one to select main memory, and the other to select auxiliary memory. Enabling the read and write functions independently makes it possible for a program whose instructions are being fetched from one memory space to store data into the other memory space.



#### **Warning**

Do not use these switches without careful planning. Careless switching between main and auxiliary memories is almost certain to have catastrophic effects on the operation of the Apple IIe. For example, if you switch to auxiliary memory with no auxiliary memory card installed, the program that is running will stop and you will have to reset the Apple IIe and start over.

---

Writing to the soft-switch at location \$C003 turns RAMRD on and enables auxiliary memory for reading; writing to location \$C002 turns RAMRD off and enables main memory for reading. Writing to the soft-switch at location \$C005 turns RAMWRT on and enables the auxiliary memory for writing; writing to location \$C004 turns RAMWRT off and enables main memory for writing. By setting these switches independently, you can use any of the four combinations of reading and writing in main or auxiliary memory.

Auxiliary memory corresponding to text Page 1 and high-resolution graphics Page 1 can be used as part of the address space from \$0200 to \$BFFF by using RAMRD and RAMWRT as described above. These areas in auxiliary RAM can also be controlled separately by using the switches described in the section "Display Mode Switching" in Chapter 2. Those switches are named BOSTORE, PAGE2, and HIRES.

As shown in Table 4-6, the BOSTORE switch functions as an enabling switch: with it on, the PAGE2 switch selects main memory or auxiliary memory. With the HIRES switch off, the memory space switched by PAGE2 is the text display Page 1, from \$0400 to \$07FF; with HIRES on, PAGE2 switches both text Page 1 and high-resolution graphics Page 1, from \$2000 to \$3FFF.

If you are using both the auxiliary-RAM control switches and the auxiliary-display-page control switches, the display-page control switches take priority: if BOSTORE is off, RAMRD and RAMWRT work for the entire memory space from \$0200 to \$BFFF, but if BOSTORE is on, RAMRD and RAMWRT have no effect on the display page. Specifically, if BOSTORE is on and HIRES is off, PAGE2 controls text Page 1 regardless of the settings of RAMRD and RAMWRT. Likewise, if BOSTORE and HIRES are both on, PAGE2 controls both text Page 1 and high-resolution graphics Page 1, again regardless of RAMRD and RAMWRT.

A single soft switch named ALTZP (for alternate zero page) switches the bank-switched memory and the associated stack and zero page area between main and auxiliary memory. As shown in Table 4-6, writing to location \$C009 turns ALTZP on and selects auxiliary-memory stack and zero page; writing to the soft switch at location \$C008 turns ALTZP off and selects main-memory stack and zero page for both reading and writing. The section "Auxiliary-memory Routines", below, describes firmware that you can call to help you switch between main and auxiliary memory.

When these switches are on, auxiliary memory is being used; when they are off, main memory is being used.

There are three more locations associated with the auxiliary-memory switches. The high-order bits of the bytes you read at these locations tell you the settings of the three soft switches described above. The byte you read at location \$C013 has its high bit set to 1 if RAMRD is on (auxiliary memory is read-enabled), or 0 if RAMRD is off (the 48K block of main memory is read-enabled). The byte location \$C014 has its high bit set to 1 if RAMWRT is on (auxiliary memory is write-enabled), or 0 if RAMWRT is off (the 48K block of main memory is write-enabled). The byte at location \$C016 has its high bit set to 1 if ALTZP is on (the bank-switched area, stack, and zero page in the auxiliary memory are selected), or 0 if ALTZP is off (these areas in main memory are selected).

**Table 4-6** Auxiliary-memory Select Switches

(1) When BOSTORE is on, the PAGE2 switch selects main or auxiliary display memory.  
 (2) When BOSTORE is on, the HIRES switch enables you to use the PAGE2 switch to switch between the high-resolution Page 1 area in main memory or auxiliary memory.

Name	Function	Location		Notes
		Hex	Decimal	
RAMRD	Read auxiliary memory	\$C003	49155 - 16381	Write
	Read main memory	\$C002	49154 - 16382	Write
	Read RAMRD switch	\$C013	49171 - 16365	Read
RAMWRT	Write auxiliary memory	\$C005	49157 - 16379	Write
	Write main memory	\$C004	49156 - 16380	Write
	Read RAMWRT switch	\$C014	49172 - 16354	Read
BOSTORE	On: access display page	\$C001	49153 - 16383	Write
	Off: use RAMRD, RAMWRT	\$C000	49152 - 16384	Write
	Read BOSTORE switch	\$C018	49176 - 16360	Read
PAGE2	Page 2 on (Aux. memory)	\$C055	49237 - 16299	1
	Page 2 off (Main memory)	\$C054	49236 - 16300	1
	Read PAGE2 switch	\$C01C	49180 - 16356	Read
HIRES	On: access hi-res pages	\$C057	49239 - 16297	2
	Off: use RAMRD, RAMWRT	\$C056	49238 - 16298	2
	Read HIRES switch	\$C01D	49181 - 16355	Read
ALTZP	Auxiliary stack & z. p.	\$C009	49161 - 16373	Write
	Main stack & zero page	\$C008	49160 - 16374	Write
	Read ALTZP switch	\$C01E	49174 - 16352	Read

In order to have enough memory locations for all of the soft switches and remain compatible with the Apple II and Apple II Plus, the soft switches listed in Table 4-6 share their memory locations with the keyboard functions listed in Table 2-2. The operations — read or write — shown in Table 4-6 for controlling the auxiliary memory are just the ones that are not used for reading the keyboard and clearing the strobe.

### Auxiliary-memory Subroutines

If you want to write assembly-language programs that use auxiliary memory but you don't want to manage the auxiliary memory yourself, you can use the built-in auxiliary-memory subroutines. These subroutines make it possible to use the auxiliary memory without having to manipulate the soft switches described in the previous section.

The subroutines described below make it easier to use auxiliary memory, but they do not protect you from errors. You still have to plan your use of auxiliary memory to avoid catastrophic effects on your program.

You use these built-in subroutines the same way you use the I/O subroutines described in Chapter 3: by making subroutine calls to their starting locations. Those locations are shown in Table 4-7.

Table 4-7 Auxiliary-memory Routines

Subroutine Name	Location	Description
AUXMOVE	\$C31 1	Moves data blocks between main and auxiliary memory
XFER	\$C31 4	Transfers program control between main and auxiliary memory

### ***Moving Data to Auxiliary Memory***

In your assembly-language programs, you can use the built-in subroutine named **AUXMOVE** to copy blocks of data from main memory to auxiliary memory or from auxiliary memory to main memory. Before calling this routine, you must put the data addresses into byte pairs in page zero and set the carry bit to select the direction of the move — main to auxiliary or auxiliary to main.

#### **Warning**

Don't try to use **AUXMOVE** to copy data in page zero or page one (the 6502 stack) or in the bank-switched memory (\$D000-\$FFFF). **AUXMOVE** uses page zero all during the copy, so it can't handle moves in the memory space switched by **ALTZP**.

The pairs of bytes you use for passing addresses to this subroutine are called **A1**, **A2**, and **A4**, and they are used for parameter passing by several of the Apple IIe's built-in routines. The addresses of these byte pairs are shown in Table 4-8.

**Table 4-8** Parameters for **AUXMOVE** Routine

Name	Location	Parameter passed
Carry		1 = Move from main to auxiliary memory 0 = Move from auxiliary to main memory
A1L	\$3C	Source starting address, low-order byte
A1H	\$3D	Source starting address, high-order byte
A2L	\$3E	Source ending address, low-order byte
A2H	\$3F	Source ending address, high-order byte
A4L	\$42	Destination starting address, low-order byte
A4H	\$43	Destination starting address, high-order byte

Put the addresses of the first and last bytes of the block of memory you want to copy into A1 and A2. Put the starting address of the block of memory you want to copy the data to into A4.

The AUXMOVE routine uses the carry bit to select the direction to copy the data. To copy data from main memory to auxiliary memory, set the carry bit; to copy data from auxiliary memory to main memory, clear the carry bit.

When you make the subroutine call to AUXMOVE, the subroutine copies the block of data as specified by the A registers and the carry bit. When it is finished, the accumulator and the X and Y registers are just as they were when you called it.

#### ***Transferring Control to Auxiliary Memory***

You can use the built-in routine named XFER to transfer control to and from program segments in auxiliary memory. You must set up three parameters before using XFER: the address of the routine you are transferring to, the direction of the transfer (main to auxiliary or auxiliary to main), and which page zero and stack you want to use.

**Table 4-9** Parameters for XFER Routine

Name or Location	Parameter passed
Carry	1 = Transfer from main to auxiliary memory 0 = Transfer from auxiliary to main memory
Overflow	1 = Use page zero and stack in auxiliary memory 0 = Use page zero and stack in main memory
\$3ED	Program starting address, low-order byte
\$3EE	Program starting address, high-order byte

Put the transfer address into the two bytes at locations \$3ED and \$3EE, with the low-order byte first, as usual. The direction of the transfer is controlled by the carry bit: set the carry bit to transfer to a program in auxiliary memory; clear the carry bit to transfer to a program in main memory. Use the overflow bit to select which page zero and stack you want to use: clear the overflow bit to use the main memory; set the overflow bit to use the auxiliary memory.

After you have set up the parameters, pass control to the XFER routine by a jump instruction, rather than a subroutine call. XFER saves the accumulator and the transfer address on the current stack, then sets up the soft switches for the parameters you have selected and jumps to the new program.

#### **Warning**

It is the programmer's responsibility to save the current stack pointer somewhere in the current memory space before using XFER and to restore it after regaining control. Failure to do so will cause program errors.

## ***The Reset Routine***

To put the Apple IIe into a known state when it has just been turned on or after a program has malfunctioned, there is a procedure called the reset routine. The reset routine is built into the Apple IIe's firmware, and it is initiated any time you turn power on or press the [RESET] key while holding down the [CONTROL] key. The reset routine puts the Apple IIe into its normal operating mode and restarts the resident program.

When you initiate a reset, hardware in the Apple IIe sets the memory-controlling soft switches to normal: main board RAM and ROM are enabled, and, if there is an 80-column text or extended 80-column text card in the auxiliary slot, expansion slot 3 is allocated to the built-in 80-column firmware. Auxiliary RAM is disabled and the bank-switched memory space is set up to read from ROM and write to RAM, using the second bank at \$D000.

The reset routine sets the display-controlling soft switches to display 40-column text Page 1 using the primary character set, then sets the window equal to the full 40-column display, puts the cursor at the bottom of the screen and sets the display format to normal.

The reset routine sets the keyboard and display as the standard input and output devices by loading the standard I/O links (see Chapter 6). It turns annunciators 0 and 1 off and annunciators 2 and 3 on, clears the keyboard strobe, turns off any active accessory-card ROM (see Chapter 6) and outputs a bell (tone).

The Apple IIe has three types of reset: power-on reset, also called cold-start reset; warm-start reset; and forced cold-start reset. The procedure described above is the same for any type of reset. What happens next depends on the reset vector. The reset routine checks the reset vector to determine whether it is

valid or not, as described below in the section, "The Reset Vector". If the reset was caused by turning the power on, the vector will not be valid, and the reset routine will perform the cold-start procedure. If the vector is valid, the routine will perform the warm-start procedure.

### ***The Cold-start Procedure***

If the reset vector is not valid, either the Apple IIe has just been turned on or something has caused memory contents to be changed. The reset routine clears the display and puts the string "Apple ][" at the top of the display. It loads the reset vector and the validity-check byte as described below, then starts checking the expansion slots to see if there is a disk drive controller card in one of them, starting with slot 7 and working down. If it finds a controller card, it initiates the bootstrap (startup) routine that resides in the controller card's firmware. The bootstrap then loads the Disk Operating System from the disk in drive 1. When DOS has been loaded, it displays other messages on the screen. If there is no disk in the disk drive, the drive motor just keeps spinning until you press **CONTROL** - **RESET**. For more information about DOS and the startup procedure, see the *DOS Manual*.

If the reset routine doesn't find a controller card, or if you press **CONTROL** - **RESET** again before the startup procedure has been completed, the reset routine will continue without using the disk, and pass control to the built-in Applesoft interpreter.

### ***The Warm-start Procedure***

Whenever you press **CONTROL** - **RESET** when the Apple IIe has already completed a cold-start reset, the reset vector is still valid and it is not necessary to reinitialize the entire system. The reset routine simply uses the vector to transfer control to the resident program, which is normally the built-in Applesoft interpreter. If the resident program is indeed Applesoft, your Applesoft program and variables are still intact. If you are using DOS, it is the resident program and it restarts either Applesoft or Integer BASIC, whichever you were using when you pressed **CONTROL** - **RESET**.

A program in bank-switched RAM cannot use the reset vector to regain control after a reset, because the reset routine enables ROM in the bank-switched memory space. If you are using Integer BASIC, which is in the bank-switched RAM, you are also using DOS, and it is DOS that controls the reset vector and restarts BASIC.

### Forced Cold Start

If a program has loaded the reset vector to point to the beginning of the program, as described below, pressing **CONTROL** - **RESET** causes a warm-start reset that uses the vector to transfer control to that program. If you want to stop such a program without turning the power off and on, you can force a cold-start reset by holding down the **CONTROL** key and the **OPEN-APPLE** key, then pressing and releasing the **RESET** key.

When you want to stop a program unconditionally — for example, to start up the Apple IIe with some other program — you should use the forced cold-start reset, **CONTROL** - **OPEN-APPLE** - **RESET**, instead of turning the power off and on.

Whenever you press **CONTROL** - **RESET**, firmware in the Apple IIe always checks to see whether either **APPLE** key is down. If the **SOLO-APPLE** key is down, with or without the **OPEN-APPLE** key, the firmware performs the self-test described below. If only the **OPEN-APPLE** key is down, the firmware starts a forced cold-start reset. First, it destroys the program or data in memory by writing two bytes of arbitrary data into each page of main RAM. The two bytes that get written over in page 3 are the ones that contain the reset vector. The reset routine then performs a normal cold-start reset.

### The Reset Vector

When you reset the Apple IIe, the reset routine transfers control to the resident program by means of an address stored in page 3 of main RAM. This address is called a vector because it directs program control to a specified destination. There are several other vector addresses stored in page 3, as shown in Table 4-10, including the interrupt vectors described in Chapter 6, and the DOS vectors described in the *DOS Manual*.

The cold-start reset routine stores the starting address of the built-in Applesoft interpreter, low-order byte first, in the reset vector address at locations 1010 and 1011 (hexadecimal \$3F2 and \$3F3). It then stores a validity-check byte, also called the power-up byte, at location 1012 (hexadecimal \$3F4). The validity-check byte is computed by performing an exclusive-OR of the second byte of the vector with the constant 165 (hexadecimal \$A5). Each time you reset the Apple IIe, the reset routine uses this byte to determine whether the reset vector is still valid.

You can change the reset vector so that the reset routine will transfer control to your program instead of to the Applesoft interpreter. For this to work, you must also change the validity-check byte to the exclusive-OR of the high-order byte of your new reset vector with the constant 165 (\$A5). If you fail to do this, then the next time you reset the Apple IIe, the reset routine will determine that the reset vector is invalid and perform a cold-start reset, eventually transferring control to the disk bootstrap routine or to Applesoft.

Table 4-10 Page 3 Vectors

	Vector address	Vector function
	Decimal	Hex
1008	\$3F0	Address of the subroutine that handles BRK requests
1009	\$3F1	(normally \$59, \$FA).
1010	\$3F2	Reset vector (see text).
1011	\$3F3	
1012	\$3F4	Power-up byte (see text).
1013	\$3F5	Jump instruction to the subroutine that handles Applesoft
1014	\$3F6	"&" commands (normally \$4C, \$58, \$FF).
1015	\$3F7	
1016	\$3F8	Jump instruction to the subroutine that handles user
1017	\$3F9	( <b>CONTROL</b> -Y) commands.
1018	\$3FA	
1019	\$3FB	Jump instruction to the subroutine that handles
1020	\$3FC	non-maskable interrupts.
1021	\$3FD	
1022	\$3FE	Interrupt vector (address of the subroutine that handles
1023	\$3FF	interrupt requests).

The reset routine has a subroutine that generates the validity-check byte for the current reset vector. You can use this subroutine by doing a subroutine call to location -1169 (hexadecimal \$FB6F). When your program finishes, it can return the Apple IIe to normal operation by restoring the original reset vector and again calling the subroutine to fix up the validity-check byte.

### **Automatic Self-test**

If you reset the Apple IIe by holding down the **CONTROL** key and the **SOLID-APPLE** key while pressing and releasing the **RESET** key, the reset routine will start running the built-in self-test. Successfully running this test assures you that the Apple IIe is operational.



#### **Warning**

The self-test routine tests the Apple IIe's programmable memory by writing and then reading it. All programs and data in programmable memory when you run the self-test are destroyed.

The self-test takes several seconds to run. While it is running, the display changes from black to white and back twice. If the test finishes normally, the Apple IIe displays an "OK" message and waits for you to request a normal reset.

If the self-test detects something wrong, it displays an error message and stops. If you have been running programs prior to running the self-test, some soft-switches could be on, causing the self-test to fail and display an error message. If this happens, turn the power off for several seconds, then turn it back on and run the self-test again. If it still fails, there is really something wrong; to get it corrected, contact your Apple dealer for service.

THE TERRITORY

## Using The Monitor

---

- 87 Invoking the Monitor
- 88 Syntax of Monitor Commands
- 89 Monitor Memory Commands
- 89 Examining Memory Contents
- 89 Memory Dump
- 92 Changing Memory Contents
- 93 Changing One Byte
- 93 Changing Consecutive Locations
- 94 Moving Data in Memory
- 96 Comparing Data in Memory
- 97 Monitor Register Command
- 97 Examining and Changing Registers
- 98 Monitor Cassette Tape Commands
- 98 Saving Data on Tape
- 99 Reading Data from Tape
- 101 Miscellaneous Monitor Commands
- 101 Display Inverse and Normal
- 102 Back to BASIC
- 102 Redirecting Input and Output
- 103 Hexadecimal Arithmetic
- 104 Special Tricks with the Monitor
- 104 Multiple Command Lines
- 104 Filling Memory
- 106 Repeating Commands
- 106 Creating Your Own Commands
- 107 Machine-language Programs
- 107 Running a Program
- 108 Disassembled Programs
- 110 The Mini-Assembler
- 113 Mini-Assembler Instruction Formats
- 115 Summary of Monitor Commands



## *Using The Monitor*

The System Monitor is a set of subroutines in the Apple IIe firmware. The Monitor provides a standard interface to the built-in I/O devices described in Chapter 2. The I/O subroutines described in Chapter 3 are part of the System Monitor.

The Disk Operating System and the BASIC interpreters use these subroutines by direct calls to their starting locations, as described for the I/O subroutines in Chapter 3; the starting addresses for all of the standard subroutines are listed in Appendix C. If you wish, you can call the standard subroutines from your programs in the same fashion.

You can perform most of the Monitor functions directly from the keyboard. This chapter tells you how to use the Monitor to

- look at one or more memory locations
- change the contents of any location
- write programs in machine language to be executed directly by the Apple IIe's microprocessor
- save blocks of data and programs onto cassette tape and read them back in again
- move and compare blocks of memory
- invoke other programs from the Monitor

### *Invoking the Monitor*

The System Monitor starts at memory location \$FF69 (decimal 65385 or -151). To invoke the Monitor, you make a **CALL** statement to this location from the keyboard or from a BASIC program. When the Monitor is running, its prompting character, an asterisk (\*), appears on the left side of the display screen, followed by a blinking cursor.

To use the Monitor, you type commands at the keyboard. When you have finished using the Monitor, you return to the BASIC language you were previously using by pressing [CONTROL]-[RESET], by typing [CONTROL]-C and pressing [RETURN], or by typing 3D0G, which executes the resident program — usually Applesoft — whose address is stored in a jump instruction at location \$3D0.

### *Syntax of Monitor Commands*

To give a command to the Monitor, you type a line on the keyboard, then press [RETURN]. The Monitor accepts the line using the standard I/O subroutine GETLN described in Chapter 3. A Monitor command can be up to 255 characters in length, ending with a carriage return.

A Monitor command can include three kinds of information: addresses, data values, and command characters. You type addresses and data values in hexadecimal notation. Hexadecimal notation uses the ten decimal digits (0-9) and the first six letters (A-F) to represent the sixteen values from 0 to 15. A pair of hexadecimal digits represents values from 0 to 255, corresponding to a byte, and a group of four hexadecimal digits can represent values from 0 to 65,536, corresponding to a word. Any address in the Apple IIe can be represented by four hexadecimal digits.

When the command you type calls for an address, the Monitor accepts any group of hexadecimal digits. If there are fewer than four digits in the group, it adds leading zeros; if there are more than four hexadecimal digits, the Monitor uses only the last four digits. It follows a similar procedure when the command syntax calls for two-digit data values.

Each command you type consists of one command character, usually the first letter of the command name. The Monitor recognizes 22 different command characters. Some of them are punctuation marks, some are uppercase letters, and some are control characters. Note: although the Monitor recognizes and interprets them, control characters typed on an input line do not appear on the screen. (See the "Summary of Monitor Commands" at the end of the chapter.)

This chapter contains many examples of the use of Monitor commands. In the examples, the commands and values you type are shown in a normal typeface and the responses of the Monitor are in a computer typeface. Of course, when you perform the

examples, all of the characters that appear on the display screen will be in the same typeface. Some of the data values displayed by your Apple IIe may differ from the values printed in these examples, because they are variables stored in programmable memory.

## **Monitor Memory Commands**

When you use the Monitor to examine and change the contents of memory, it keeps track of the address of the last location whose value you inquired about and the address of the location that is next to have its value changed. These are called the last opened location and the next changeable location.

### **Examining Memory Contents**

When you type the address of a memory location and press **RETURN**, the Monitor responds with the address you typed, a dash, a space, and the value stored at that location, like this:

```
*E000  
E000- 20  
*33  
0033-AA
```

Each time the Monitor displays the value stored at a location, it saves the address of that location as the last opened location and as the next changeable location.

### **Memory Dump**

When you type a period (.) followed by an address, and then press **RETURN**, the Monitor displays a memory dump: the data values stored at all the memory locations from the one following the last opened location to the location whose address you typed following the period. The Monitor saves the last location displayed as both the last opened location and the next changeable location. In these examples, the amount of data displayed by the Monitor depends on how much larger than the last opened location the address after the period is.

\*.20

0020- 00

\*.2B

0021- 28 00 18 0F 0C 00 00  
0028- A8 06 D0 07

\*.300

0300- 99

\*.315

0301- B9 00 08 0A 0A 0A 99  
0308- 00 08 C8 D0 F4 A6 2B A9  
0310- 09 85 27 AD CC 03

\*.32A

0316- 85 41  
0318- 84 40 8A 4A 4A 4A 4A 09  
0320- C0 85 3F A9 5D 85 3E 20  
0328- 43 03 20

\*

A memory dump includes several different items of information. The first line in the dump begins with the address of the location following the last opened location; all other lines begin with addresses that end alternately in zeros and eights, and there are never more than eight data values displayed on a single line in a memory dump.

When the Monitor performs a memory dump, it starts at the location immediately following the last opened location and displays that address and the data value stored there. It then displays the values of successive locations up to and including the location whose address you typed, but only up to eight values on a line. When it reaches a location whose address is a multiple of eight—that is, one that ends with an 8 or a 0—it displays that address as the beginning of a new line, then continues displaying more values.

After the Monitor has displayed the value at the location whose address you specified in the command, it stops the memory dump and sets that location as both the last opened location and the next changeable location. If the address specified on the input line is less than the address of the last opened location, the Monitor displays only the address and value of the location following the last opened location.

You can combine the two commands, opening a location and dumping memory, by simply concatenating them: type the first address, a period, and the second address. This combination of two addresses separated by a period is called a memory range.

\*300.32F

```
0300- 99 B9 00 08 0A 0A 0A 99
0308- 00 08 C8 D0 F4 A6 2B A9
0310- 09 85 27 AD CC 03 85 41
0318- 84 40 8A 4A 4A 4A 4A 09
0320- C0 85 3F A9 5D 85 3E 20
0328- 43 03 20 46 03 A5 3D 4D
```

\*30.40

```
0030- AA 00 FF AA 05 C2 05 C2
0038- 18 FD D0 03 3C 00 40 00
0040- 30
```

\*E015.E025

```
E015- 4C ED FD
E018- A9 20 C5 24 B0 0C A9 BD
E020- A0 07 20 ED FD A9
```

Pressing the [RETURN] key by itself causes the Monitor to display one line of a memory dump; that is, a memory dump from the location following the last opened location to the next multiple-of-eight boundary. The Monitor saves the address of the last location displayed as the last opened location and the next changeable location.

\*5

0005- 00

\* [RETURN]

00 00

\* [RETURN]

0008- 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00

\*32

0032- FF

\* [RETURN]

AA 00 C2 05 C2

\* [RETURN]

003B- 1B FD D0 03 3C 00 3F 00

\*

### ***Changing Memory Contents***

The previous section showed you how to display the values stored in the Apple IIe's memory; this section shows you how to change those values. You can change any location in RAM (programmable memory) and you can also change the soft switches and output devices by changing the locations assigned to them.

---

#### **Warning**

Use these commands carefully. If you change the zero-page locations used by Applesoft and DOS, you may lose programs or data stored in memory.

---

### Changing One Byte

The previous commands keep track of the next changeable location; these commands make use of it. In the next example, you open location 0, then type a colon followed by a value.

```
*0
```

```
0000- 00
```

```
*:5F
```

The contents of the next changeable location have just been changed to the value you typed, as you can see by examining that location:

```
*0
```

```
0000- 5F
```

```
*
```

You can also combine opening and changing into one operation by typing an address followed by a colon and a value. In the example, you type the address again to verify the change.

```
*302:42
```

```
*302
```

```
0302- 42
```

```
*
```

When you change the contents of a location, the value that was contained in that location disappears, never to be seen again. The new value will remain until you replace it with another value.

### Changing Consecutive Locations

You don't have to type a separate command with an address, a colon, a value, and **RETURN** for each location you want to change. You can change the the values of up to eighty-five

consecutive locations at a time (or even more, if you omit leading zeros from the values) by typing only the initial address and colon followed by all the values separated by spaces, and ending with **RETURN**. The Monitor will duly store the consecutive values in consecutive locations, starting at the location whose address you typed. After it has processed the string of values, it takes the location following the last changed location as the next changeable location. Thus, you can continue changing consecutive locations without typing an address on the next input line by typing another colon and more values. In these examples, you first change some locations, then examine them to verify the changes.

```
*300:69 01 20 ED FD 4C 0 3
```

```
*300
```

```
0300- 69
```

```
* [RETURN]
```

```
01 20 ED FD 4C 00 03
```

```
*10:0 1 2 3
```

```
*:4 5 6 7
```

```
*10.17
```

```
0010- 00 01 02 03 04 05 06 07
```

---

### *Moving Data in Memory*

You can copy a block of data stored in a range of memory locations from one area in memory to another by using the Monitor's **MOVE** command. To move a range of memory, you must tell the Monitor both where the data is now situated in memory — the source locations — and where you want the copy to go — the destination locations. You give this information to the Monitor by means of three addresses: the address of the first location in the destination and the addresses of the first and last locations in the source. You specify the starting and ending addresses of the source range by separating them with a period. You separate the destination address from the range addresses with a less-than

character (<), which you may think of as an arrow pointing in the direction of the move. Finally, you tell the Monitor that this is a MOVE command by typing the letter M. The format of the complete MOVE command looks like this:

{destination} < {start} . {end} M

When you type the actual command, the words in curly braces should be replaced by hexadecimal addresses, and the braces and spaces should be omitted. Here are some examples of memory moves. First, you examine the values stored in one range of memory, then store several values in another range of memory; the actual MOVE commands end with the letter M:

\*0.F

0000- 5F 00 05 07 00 00 00 00  
0008- 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00

\*300:A9 8D 20 ED FD A9 45 20 DA FD 4C 00 03

\*300.30C

0300- A9 8D 20 ED FD A9 45 20  
0308- DA FD 4C 00 03

\*0<300.30CM

\*0.C

0000- A9 8D 20 ED FD A9 45 20  
0008- DA FD 4C 00 03

\*310 8.AM

\*310.312

0310- DA FD 4C

\*2<7.9M

\*0.C

0000- A9 8D 20 DA FD A9 45 20  
0008- DA FD 4C 00 03

The Monitor moves a copy of the data stored in the source range of locations to the destination locations. The values in the source range are left undisturbed. The Monitor remembers the last location in the source range as the last opened location, and the first location in the source range as the next changeable location. If the second address in the source range specification is less than the first, then only one value (that of the first location in the range) will be moved.

If the destination address of the MOVE command is inside the source range of addresses, then strange (and sometimes wonderful) things happen: the locations between the beginning of the source range and the destination address are treated as a sub-range and the values in this sub-range are replicated throughout the source range. See the section "Special Tricks with the Monitor" for an interesting application of this feature.

### ***Comparing Data in Memory***

You can use the VERIFY command to compare two ranges of memory using the same format you use to move a range of memory from one place to another. In fact, the VERIFY command can be used immediately after a MOVE to make sure that the move was successful. The VERIFY command, like the MOVE command, needs a range and a destination. The syntax of the VERIFY command is:

```
{destination} < {start} . {end} ↵
```

The Monitor compares the values in the source locations with the values in the locations beginning at the destination address. If any values don't match, the Monitor displays the address at which the discrepancy was found and the two values that differ. In the example, you store data values in the range of locations from 0 to \$D, copy them to locations starting at \$300 with the MOVE command, and then compare them using the VERIFY command. When you use the VERIFY command after you change the value at location 6 to \$E4, it detects the change.

```
•0:D7 F2 E9 F4 F4 E5 EE A0 E2 F9 A0 C3 C4 C5
•300<0.DM
•300<0.DV
•6:E4
•300<0.DV
0006-E4 (EE)
```

If the **VERIFY** command finds a discrepancy, it displays the address of the location in the source range whose value differs from its counterpart in the destination range. If there is no discrepancy, **VERIFY** displays nothing. The **VERIFY** command leaves the values in both ranges unchanged. The last opened location is the last location in the source range, and the next changeable location is the first location in the source range, just as in the **MOVE** command. If the ending address of the range is less than the starting address, the values of only the first locations in the ranges will be compared. Like the **MOVE** command, the **VERIFY** command also does unusual things if the destination address is within the source range; see the section "Special Tricks with the Monitor".

### ***Monitor Register Command***

Even though the actual contents of the 6502's internal registers are changing as you use the Monitor, you can examine the values that the registers contained at the time the Monitor gained control, either because you called it or because the program you are debugging stopped at a break (BRK). You can also store new register values that will be used when you execute a program from the Monitor using the **G0** command, described below.

---

### ***Examining and Changing Registers***

When you call the Monitor, it stores the contents of the 6502 registers in memory. The registers are stored in the order A, X, Y, P (processor status register), and S stack pointer, starting at location \$45 (decimal 69). When you give the Monitor a **G0** command, the Monitor loads the registers from these five locations before it executes the first instruction in your program.

Typing **CONTROL-E** and pressing **RETURN** invokes the Monitor's **EXAMINE** command, which displays the stored register values and sets the location containing the contents of the A-register as the next changeable location. After using the **EXAMINE** command, you can change the values in these locations by typing a colon and then typing the new values separated by spaces. In the following example, you display the registers, change the first two, and then display them again to verify the change.

• **CONTROL-E**

A=0A X=FF Y=D8 P=B0 S=F8

• :B0 02

• **CONTROL-E**

A=B0 X=02 Y=D8 P=B0 S=F8

## Monitor Cassette Tape Commands

The Apple IIe has two jacks for connecting an audio cassette tape recorder. With a recorder connected, you can use the Monitor commands described below to save the contents of a range of memory onto a standard cassette and recall it again for later use.

### Saving Data on Tape

The Monitor's **WRITE** command saves the contents of up to 65,536 memory locations on cassette tape. To save a range of memory on tape, give the Monitor the starting and ending addresses of the range, followed by the letter **W** (for **WRITE**), like this:

{start} . {end} **W**

Don't press **RETURN** yet; first, put the tape recorder in record mode and let the tape run for a second, then press **RETURN**. The Monitor will write a ten-second tone onto the tape and then write the data. The tone acts as a leader; later, when the Monitor reads the tape, the leader enables the Monitor to get in step with the signal from the tape. When the Monitor is finished writing the range you specified, it will sound a bell (beep) and display a prompt. You should rewind the tape and label it with the memory range that's on the tape and what it's supposed to be.

Here's a small example you can save and use later to try out the READ command. Remember that you must start the cassette recorder in record mode before you press **RETURN** after typing the WRITE command.

```
*0.FF FF AD 30 C0 88 00 04 C6 01 F0 08 CA  
D0 F6 A6 00 4C 02 00 60
```

```
*0.14
```

```
0000- FF FF AD 30 C0 88 D0 04  
0008- C6 01 F0 08 CA D0 F6 A6  
0010- 00 4C 02 00 60
```

```
*0.14W
```

```
*
```

It takes about 35 seconds total to save the values of 4,096 memory locations preceded by the ten-second leader onto tape. This works out to an average data transfer rate of about 1,350 bits per second.

The WRITE command writes one extra value on the tape after it has written the values in the memory range. This extra value is the checksum, which is the eight-bit partial sum of all values in the range. When the Monitor reads the tape, it uses this value to determine if the data has been written and read correctly (see below).

---

### ***Reading Data from Tape***

Once you've saved a memory range onto tape with the Monitor's WRITE command, you can read that memory range back into the computer by using the Monitor's READ command. The data values you've stored on the tape need not be read back into the same memory range from whence they came; you can tell the Monitor to put those values into any memory range in the computer's memory, provided that it's the same size as the range you saved. The format of the READ command is the same as that of the WRITE command, except that the command letter is R:

```
{start} . {end} R
```

Once again, after typing the command, don't press **RETURN**. Instead, start the tape recorder in play mode and wait a few seconds. Although the **WRITE** command puts a ten-second leader tone on the beginning of the tape, the **READ** command needs only three seconds of this leader to lock on to the signal from the tape. You should let a few seconds of tape go by before you press **RETURN** to allow the tape recorder's output to settle down to a steady tone.

This example has two parts. First, you set a range of memory to zero, verify the contents of memory, and then type the READ command, but don't press [RETURN].

- 9.14

0000- 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00  
0008- 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00  
0010- 00 00 00 00 00

$\approx 0.14R$

Now start the cassette running in play mode, wait a few seconds, and press **RETURN**. After the Monitor sounds the bell (beep) and displays the prompt, examine the range of memory to see that the values from the tape were read correctly:

• 0.14

0000-	FF	FF	AD	30	C0	88	D0	04
0008-	C6	01	F0	08	CA	D0	F6	A6
0010-	00	4C	02	00	60			

After the Monitor has read all the data values on the tape, it reads the checksum value. It computes the checksum on the data it read and compares it to the checksum from the tape. If the two checksums differ, the Monitor sends a beep to the speaker and displays "ERR". This warns you that there was a problem reading the tape and that the values stored in memory aren't the values that were recorded on the tape. If the two checksums match, the Monitor will just send out a beep and display a prompt.

## Miscellaneous Monitor Commands

These Monitor commands enable you to change the video display format from normal to inverse and back, and to assign input and output to peripherals in expansion slots.

### Display Inverse and Normal

You can control the setting of the inverse-normal mask location used by the CDUT subroutine (described in Chapter 3) from the Monitor so that all of the Monitor's output will be in inverse format. The INVERSE command, I, sets the mask such that all subsequent inputs and outputs are displayed in inverse format. To switch the Monitor's output back to normal format, use the NORMAL command, N.

\*0.F

```
0000- 0A 0B 0C 0D 0E 0F D0 04
0008- C6 01 F0 08 CA D0 F6 A6
```

\*I

\*0.F

```
0000- 0A 0B 0C 0D 0E 0F D0 04
0008- C6 01 F0 08 CA D0 F6 A6
```

\*N

\*0.F

```
0000- 0A 0B 0C 0D 0E 0F D0 04
0008- C6 01 F0 08 CA D0 F6 A6
```

\*

## Back to BASIC

Use the BASIC command, **CONTROL** -B, to leave the Monitor and enter the BASIC that was active when you entered the Monitor. Normally, this is Applesoft BASIC, unless you deliberately switched to Integer BASIC. Any program or variables that you had previously in BASIC will be lost. If you want to re-enter BASIC with your previous program and variables intact, use the **CONTINUE BASIC** command, **CONTROL** -C. If you are using the Apple Disk Operating System (DOS), press **CONTROL** - **RESET** or type

3DG

to return to the language you were using, with your program and variables intact.

If you type the latter command, make sure that the third character you type is a zero, not a letter O. The letter G is the Monitor's **GO** command, described below in the section "Machine-language Programs".

## Redirecting Input and Output

The **PRINTER** command, activated by a **CONTROL** -P, diverts all output normally destined for the screen to an interface card in a specified expansion slot, from 1 to 7. There must be an interface card in the specified slot, or you will lose control of the computer and your program and variables may be lost. The format of the command is

{slot number} **CONTROL** -P

A **PRINTER** command to slot number 0 will switch the stream of output characters back to the Apple IIe's video display.



### Warning

Don't give the **PRINTER** command with slot number 0 to deactivate the 80-column firmware, even though you used this command to activate it in slot 3. The command works, but it just disconnects the firmware, leaving some of the soft-switches set for 80-column display.

In much the same way that the **PRINTER** command switches the output stream, the **KEYBOARD** command substitutes the interface card in a specified expansion slot for the Apple IIe's normal input device, the keyboard. The format for the **KEYBOARD** command is:

**{slot number} CONTROL -K**

A slot number of 0 for the **KEYBOARD** command directs the Monitor to accept input from the Apple IIe's built-in keyboard.

The **PRINTER** and **KEYBOARD** commands are the exact equivalents of the BASIC commands **PR#** and **IN#**. For more information on the way those commands work, refer to the section "The Standard I/O Links" in Chapter 3.

### ***Hexadecimal Arithmetic***

The Monitor will also perform one-byte hexadecimal addition and subtraction. Just type a line in one of these formats:

**{value} + {value}**  
**{value} - {value}**

The Apple IIe performs the arithmetic and displays the result, as shown in these examples:

**\*20+13**

**-33**

**\*4A-C**

**-3E**

**\*FF+4**

**-03**

**\*3-4**

**-FF**

**\***

## Special Tricks with the Monitor

This section describes some more complex ways of using the Monitor commands.

### Multiple Command Lines

You can put as many Monitor commands on a single line as you like, as long as you separate them with spaces and the total number of characters in the line is less than 254. Adjacent single-letter commands such as **L**, **S**, **I**, and **N** need not be separated by spaces.

You can freely intermix all of the commands except the **STORE** (:) command. Since the Monitor takes all values following a colon and places them in consecutive memory locations, the last value in a **STORE** must be followed by a letter command before another address is encountered. You can use the **NORMAL** command as the required letter command in such cases; it usually has no effect and can be used anywhere.

In the following example, you display a range of memory, change it, and display it again, all with one line of commands.

```
*300.307 300:18 69 1 N 300.302
0300- 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
0300- 18 69 01
*
```

If the Monitor encounters a character in the input line that it does not recognize as either a hexadecimal digit or a valid command character, it executes all the commands on the input line up to that character, then grinds to a halt with a noisy beep and ignores the remainder of the input line.

### Filling Memory

The **MOVE** command can be used to replicate a pattern of values throughout a range of memory. To do this, first store the pattern in the first locations in the range:

```
*300:11 22 33
*
```

Remember the number of values in the pattern: in this case, it is 3. Use the number to compute addresses for the MOVE command, like this:

```
{start+number} < {start} . {end-number} M
```

This MOVE command will first replicate the pattern at the locations immediately following the original pattern, then replicate that pattern following itself, and so on until it fills the entire range.

```
*303<300.32DM
```

```
*300.32F
```

```
0300- 11 22 33 11 22 33 11 22  
0308- 33 11 22 33 11 22 33 11  
0310- 22 33 11 22 33 11 22 33  
0318- 11 22 33 11 22 33 11 22  
0320- 33 11 22 33 11 22 33 11  
0328- 22 33 11 22 33 11 22 33  
*
```

You can do a similar trick with the VERIFY command to check whether a pattern repeats itself through memory. This is especially useful to verify that a given range of memory locations all contain the same value. In this example, you first fill the memory range from \$300 to \$320 with zeros and verify it, then change one location and verify again, to see the VERIFY command detect the discrepancy:

```
*300:0
```

```
*301<300.31FM
```

```
*301<300.31FV
```

```
*304:02
```

```
*301<300.31FV
```

```
0303-00 (02)  
0304-02 (00)  
*
```

## Repeating Commands

You can create a command line that repeats one or more commands over and over. You do this by beginning the part of the command line that you want to repeat with a letter command, such as `N`, and ending it with the sequence `34:n`, where `n` is a hexadecimal number that specifies the position in the line of the command where you want to start repeating; for the first character in the line, `n=0`. The value for `n` must be followed with a space in order for the loop to work properly.

This trick takes advantage of the fact that the Monitor uses an index register to step through the input buffer, starting at location \$200. Each time the Monitor executes a command, it stores the value of the index at location \$34; when that command is finished, the Monitor reloads the index register with the value at location \$34. By making the last command change the value at location \$34, you change this index so that the Monitor picks up the next command character from an earlier point in the buffer.

The only way to stop a loop like this is to press [ **CONTROL** ] - [ **RESET** ] : that is how this example ends.

\*N 300 302 34:0

## ***Creating your Own Commands***

The **USER** command, **CONTROL -Y**, forces the Monitor to jump to memory location \$3FB. You can put a JMP instruction there that jumps to your own machine-language program. Your program can then examine the Monitor's registers and pointers or the input buffer itself to obtain its data. For example, here is a

program that displays everything on the input line after the **CONTROL -Y**. The program starts at location \$300; the command line that starts with \$3F8 stores a jump to \$300 at location \$3F8.

```
*300:A4 34 B9 00 02 20 ED FD C8 C9 8D D0 F5 4C 69 FF
```

```
*3F8:4C 00 03
```

```
• CONTROL -Y THIS IS A TEST
```

```
THIS IS A TEST
```

```
*
```

## ***Machine-Language Programs***

The main reason to program in machine language is to get more speed. A program in machine language can run much faster than the same program written in high-level languages such as BASIC or Pascal, but the machine-language version usually takes a lot longer to write. There are other reasons to use machine language: you might want your program to do something that isn't included in your high-level language, or you might just enjoy the challenge of using machine language to work directly on the bits and bytes.

If you have never used machine language before, you'll need to learn the 6502 instructions listed in Appendix A. To become proficient at programming in machine language, you'll have to spend some time at it, and study one of the books on 6502 programming listed in the Bibliography.

You can get a hexadecimal dump of your program, move it around in memory, or save it on tape and recall it again using the commands described in the previous sections. The Monitor commands in this section are intended specifically for you to use in creating, writing, and debugging machine-language programs.

---

### ***Running a Program***

The Monitor command you use to start execution of your machine-language program is the **G** command. When you type an address and the letter **G**, the Apple IIe starts executing machine language instructions starting at the specified location. If you just type the **G**, execution starts at the last opened location.

The Monitor treats this program as a subroutine: it should end with an RTS (return from subroutine) instruction to transfer control back to the Monitor.

The Monitor has some special features that make it easier for you to write and debug machine-language programs, but before you get into that, here is a small machine-language program that you can run using only the simple Monitor commands already described. The program in the example merely displays the letters A through Z: you store it starting at location \$300, examine it to be sure you typed it correctly, then type 300G to start it running.

```
• 300:A9 C1 20 ED FD 18 69 1 C9 DB D0 F6 60
```

```
• 300.30C
```

```
0300- A9 C1 20 ED FD 18 69 01
0308- C9 DB D0 F6 60
```

```
• 300G
```

```
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
```

### Disassembled Programs

Since programs that translate assembly language into machine language are called **assemblers**, a program like the Monitor's LIST command that translates machine language into assembly language is called a **disassembler**.

The word **mnemonic** comes from the same root as memory and refers to short acronyms that are easier to remember than the hexadecimal operation codes themselves: for example, for clear carry you write CLC instead of \$18.

The Monitor's LIST command displays machine-language code in assembly-language form. Instead of unformatted hexadecimal gibberish, the LIST command displays each instruction on a separate line, with a three-letter instruction name, or mnemonic, and a formatted hexadecimal operand. The LIST command also converts the relative addresses used in branch instructions to absolute addresses.

The Monitor LIST command has the format:

{location} L

The LIST command starts at the specified location and displays as much memory as it takes to make up a screenfull (20 lines) of instructions, as shown in the following example:

\*300L

0300-	A9 C1	LDA	#\$C1
0302-	20 ED FD	JSR	\$FDED
0305-	18	CLC	
0306-	69 01	ADC	#\$01
0308-	C9 DB	CMP	#\$DB
030A-	D0 F6	BNE	\$0302
030C-	60	RTS	
030D-	00	BRK	
030E-	00	BRK	
030F-	00	BRK	
0310-	00	BRK	
0311-	00	BRK	
0312-	00	BRK	
0313-	00	BRK	
0314-	00	BRK	
0315-	00	BRK	
0316-	00	BRK	
0317-	00	BRK	
0318-	00	BRK	
0319-	00	BRK	
*			

The first seven lines of this example are the assembly-language form of the program you typed in the previous example. The rest of the lines are BRK instructions only if this part of memory has zeros in it; other values will be disassembled as other instructions.

The Monitor saves the address that you specify in the LIST command, but not as the last opened location used by the other commands. Instead, the Monitor saves this address as the program counter, which it uses only to point to locations within programs. Whenever the Monitor performs a LIST command, it sets the program counter to point to the location immediately following the last location displayed on the screen, so that if you type another LIST command it will display another screenfull of instructions, starting where the previous display left off.

## The Mini-assembler

Without an assembler, you have to write your machine language program, take the hexadecimal values for the opcodes and operands, and store them in memory using the commands covered in the previous sections. That is exactly what you did when you ran the previous examples.

The Integer BASIC interpreter includes an assembler called the Apple Mini-assembler that enables you to type programs into the Apple IIe using the same assembly-language format that the **L1ST** command displays. It is called a mini-assembler because it doesn't include symbolic labels, an important feature of all full-sized assemblers like the Assembler/Editor in the DOS Tool Kit (Apple product number A2D0029).

Before you can use the Mini-assembler, the Apple IIe has to be running Integer BASIC. When you start up the computer using DOS or either BASIC, the Apple IIe loads the Integer BASIC interpreter from the file named **INTBASIC** into the bank-switched RAM.

To run Integer BASIC after you have started up the computer with DOS, type

```
INT
```

The Apple IIe displays the Integer prompt character (>) and a cursor.

If you have not activated the 80-column firmware since you started up with DOS, the cursor now looks like a blinking rectangle: it is actually a space character displayed in flashing format. This is evidence that the old Monitor is operating (see Chapter 3). The old Monitor is loaded into RAM along with Integer BASIC and the mini-assembler; the next time you activate the 80-column firmware, it copies the current version of the Monitor from ROM into RAM. Once this has happened, the current Monitor is active even with Integer BASIC, and the cursor is either a blinking checkerboard or a steady rectangle.

Now enter the Monitor by typing

```
CALL -151
```

After you enter the Monitor from Integer BASIC, invoke the Mini-assembler by typing:

F666G

This is just the GO command described above starting the program stored at location \$F666 — the mini assembler. You can tell that the mini-assembler is running because it displays an exclamation point (!) as its prompt character. While the mini-assembler is running, you can execute any Monitor command by preceding it with a dollar sign (\$). Aside from that, the Mini-assembler has an instruction set and syntax all its own.

The Mini-assembler saves one address, that of the program counter. Before you start to type a program, you must set the program counter to point to the location where you want the Mini-assembler to store your program. Do this by typing the address followed by a colon.

After the colon, type the mnemonic for the first instruction in your program, followed by a space and the operand of the instruction (formats for operands are listed Table 5-1). Now press **RETURN**. The Mini-assembler converts the line you typed into hexadecimal, stores it in memory beginning at the location of the Program Counter, and then disassembles it again and displays the disassembled line. It then displays a prompt on the next line.

Now the Mini-assembler is ready to accept the second instruction in your program. To tell it that you want the next instruction to follow the first, don't type an address or a colon: just type a space and the next instruction's mnemonic and operand, then press **RETURN**. The Mini-assembler assembles that line and waits for another.

If the line you type has an error in it, the Mini-assembler beeps loudly and displays a circumflex (^) under or near the offending character in the input line. Most common errors are the result of typographical mistakes: misspelled mnemonics, missing parentheses, and so forth. The Mini-assembler also rejects the input line if you forget the space before or after a mnemonic or include an extraneous character in a hexadecimal value or address. If the destination address of a branch instruction is out of the range of the branch (more than 127 locations distant from the address of the instruction), the Mini-assembler flags this as an error.

!300:LDX #02

0300- A2 02 LDX #\$02

! LDA \$0,X

0302- B5 00 LDA \$00,X

! STA \$10,X

0304- 95 10 STA \$10,X

! DEX

0306- CA DEX

! STA \$C030

0307- 8D 30 C0 STA \$C030

! BPL \$302

030A- 10 F6 BPL \$0302

! BRK

030C- 00 BRK

There are two ways to leave the Mini-assembler and re-enter the Monitor. One way is to type the Monitor command, FF690, preceded by a dollar sign:

!\$FF690

\*

Another way to leave the Mini-assembler is to press **CONTROL** - **RESET**, which warm-starts BASIC, then type

CALL-151

Your assembly language program is now stored in memory. You can display it with the LIST command:

```
*300L
0300- A2 02      LDX    #$02
0302- B9 00      LDA    $00,X
0304- 95 10      STA    $10,X
0306- CA          DEX
0307- 8D 30 C0    STA    $C030
030A- 10 F6      BPL    $0302
030C- 00          BRK
030D- 00          BRK
030E- 00          BRK
030F- 00          BRK
0310- 00          BRK
0311- 00          BRK
0312- 00          BRK
0313- 00          BRK
0314- 00          BRK
0315- 00          BRK
0316- 00          BRK
0317- 00          BRK
0318- 00          BRK
0319- 00          BRK
*
```

#### *Mini-assembler Instruction Formats*

The Apple Mini-assembler recognizes 56 mnemonics and 13 addressing formats used in 6502 assembly-language programming. The mnemonics are standard, as used in the Synertek Programming Manual (Apple part number A2L0003), but the addressing formats are somewhat different. Table 5-1 shows the Apple standard address-mode formats for 6502 assembly language.

An address consists of one or more hexadecimal digits. The Mini-assembler interprets addresses the same way the Monitor does: if an address has fewer than four digits, the Mini-assembler adds leading zeros; if the address has more than four digits, then it uses only the last four.

In this book, dollar signs (\$) in addresses signify that the addresses are in hexadecimal notation. They are ignored by the Mini-assembler and may be omitted when typing programs.

There is no syntactical distinction between the absolute and zero-page addressing modes. If you give an instruction to the Mini-assembler that can be used in both absolute and zero-page mode, the Mini-assembler assembles that instruction in absolute mode if the operand for that instruction is greater than \$FF, and it assembles it in zero-page mode if the operand is less than \$100.

**Table 5-1** Mini-assembler Address Formats

\*Note: Accumulator and Implied-address instructions have no operands.

Addressing Mode	Format	Notes
Accumulator	-	-
Implied	-	-
Immediate	$\#\$$ {value}	-
Absolute	$\$$ [address]	-
Zero page	$\$$ [address]	-
Indexed zero page	$\$$ [address], X $\$$ [address], Y	-
Indexed absolute	$\$$ [address], X $\$$ [address], Y	-
Relative	$\$$ [address]	-
Indexed indirect	( $\$$ [address], X)	-
Indirect indexed	( $\$$ [address]), Y	-
Absolute indirect	( $\$$ [address])	-

Instructions in accumulator mode and implied addressing mode need no operands.

Branch instructions, which use the relative addressing mode, require the target address of the branch. The Mini-assembler calculates the relative distance to use in the instruction automatically. If the target address is more than 127 locations distant from the instruction, the Mini-assembler sounds a bell (beep), displays a circumflex (^) under the target address, and does not assemble the line.

If you give the Mini-assembler the mnemonic for an instruction and an operand, and the addressing mode of the operand cannot be used with the instruction you entered, the Mini-assembler will not accept the line.

## Summary of Monitor Commands

Here is a summary of the Monitor commands, showing the syntax diagram for each one. The Mini-assembler commands are included, even though they are only available when Integer BASIC is active (see the section "The Mini-assembler").

### Examining Memory

{adr\$}	Examines the value contained in one location.
{adr\$1}.{adr\$2}	Displays the values contained in all locations between {adr\$1} and {adr\$2}.
<b>RETURN</b>	Displays the values in up to eight locations following the last opened location.

### Changing the Contents of Memory

{adr\$}:{val} {val}...	Stores the values in consecutive memory locations starting at {adr\$}.
:{val}:{val}...	Stores values in memory starting at the next changeable location.

### Moving and Comparing

{dest}<{start}.{end}M	Copies the values in the range {start}.{end} into the range beginning at {dest}.
{dest}<{start}.{end}V	Compares the values in the range {start}.{end} to those in the range beginning at {dest}.

## The Register Command

**[CONTROL]-E**

Displays the locations where the contents of the 6502's registers are stored and opens them for changing.

## Cassette Tape Commands

{start}..{end}W

Writes the values in the memory range {start}..{end} onto tape, preceded by a ten-second leader.

{start}..{end}R

Reads values from tape, storing them in memory beginning at {start} and stopping at {end}. Prints "ERR" if an error occurs.

## Miscellaneous Monitor Commands

I

Sets Inverse display mode.

N

Sets Normal display mode.

**[CONTROL]-B**

Enters the language currently active (usually Applesoft).

**[CONTROL]-C**

Returns to the language currently active (usually Applesoft).

{val}+{val}

Adds the two values and prints the hexadecimal result.

{val}-{val}

Subtracts the second value from the first and prints the result.

{slot} | **CONTROL**] -P

Diverts output to the device whose interface card is in slot number {slot}. If {slot}=0, accepts input from the keyboard.

**CONTROL**] -Y

Jumps to the machine language subroutine at location \$3F8.

### Running and Listing Programs

{adr}s]G

Transfers control to the machine language program beginning at {adr}s.

{adr}s]L

Disassembles and displays 20 instructions, starting at {adr}s. Subsequent L's display 20 more instructions.

### The Mini-assembler

The Mini-assembler is only available when Integer BASIC is active.

F666G

Invokes the Mini-assembler.

\$(command)

Executes a Monitor command from the Mini-assembler.

\$FF69G

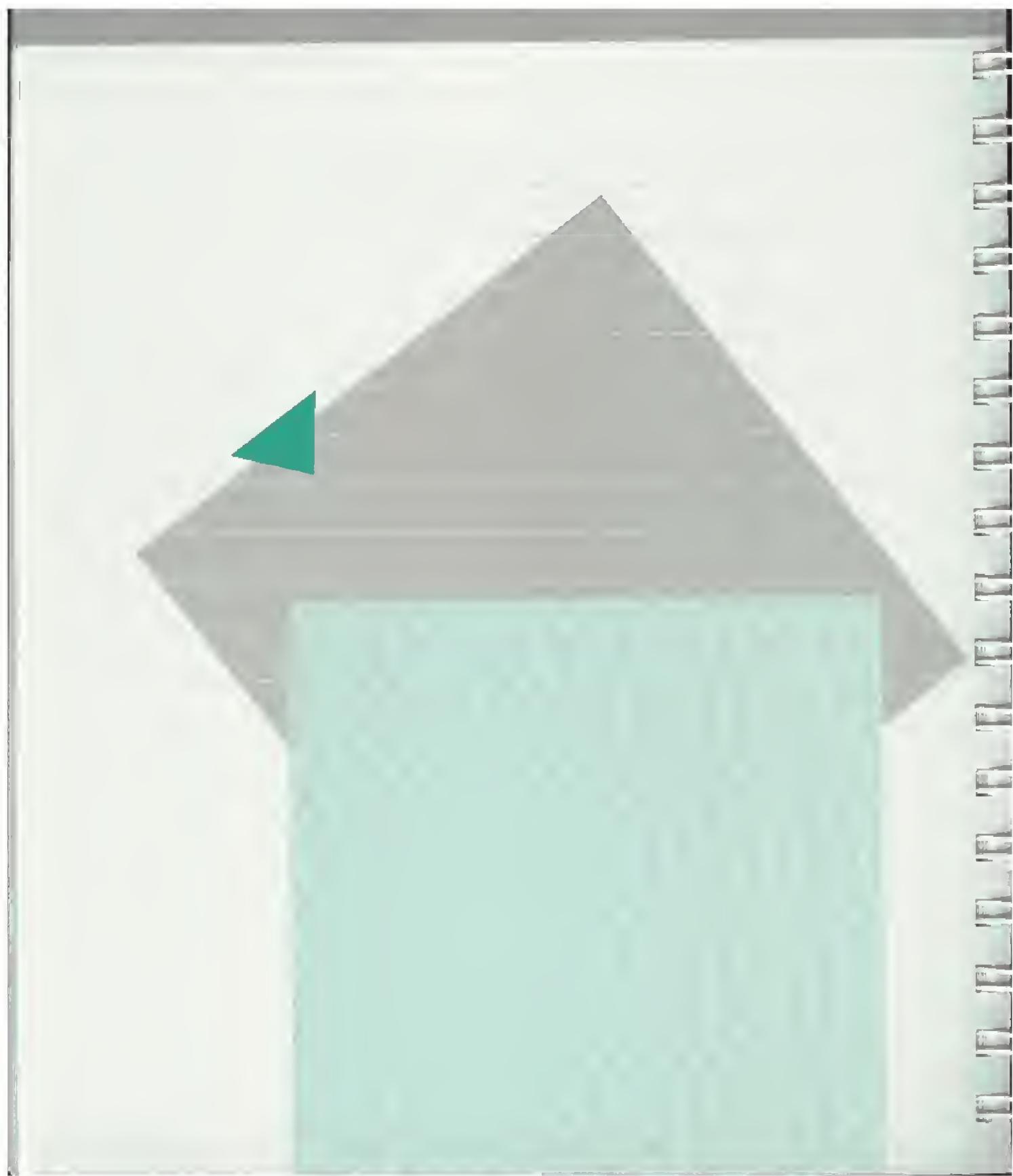
Leaves the Mini-assembler.

THEIR FATHERS' FATHERS' FATHERS' FATHERS' FATHERS'

## *Programming for Peripheral Cards*

---

- 121 Peripheral-card Memory Spaces
- 122 Peripheral-card I/O Space
- 122 Peripheral-card ROM Space
- 123 Expansion ROM Space
- 125 Peripheral-card RAM Space
- 126 I/O Programming Suggestions
- 127 Finding the Slot Number
- 127 I/O Addressing
- 128 RAM Addressing
- 129 Changing the Standard I/O Links
- 131 Using Interrupts
- 131 Other Uses of I/O Memory Space
- 132 Switching I/O Memory



## Programming for Peripheral Cards

The seven expansion slots on the Apple IIe's main circuit board are used for installing circuit cards containing the hardware and firmware needed to interface peripheral devices to the Apple IIe. These slots are not simple I/O ports; peripheral cards can access the Apple IIe's data, address, and control lines via these slots. The expansion slots are numbered from 1 to 7, and certain signals, described below, are used to select a specific slot.

The older Apple II and Apple II Plus models have an eighth expansion slot; slot number 0. On those models, slot 0 is normally used for a language card or a ROM card; the functions of the Apple II Language Card are built into the main circuit board of the Apple IIe.

### Peripheral-card Memory Spaces

Because the Apple IIe's 6502 microprocessor does all of its I/O through memory locations, portions of the Apple IIe's memory space have been allocated for the exclusive use of the cards in the expansion slots. In addition to the memory locations used for actual I/O, there are memory spaces available for programmable memory (RAM) in the main memory and for read-only memory (ROM or PROM) on the peripheral cards themselves.

The memory spaces allocated for the peripheral cards are described below. Those memory spaces are used for small dedicated programs such as I/O drivers. Peripheral cards that contain their own driver routines in firmware like this are called intelligent peripherals. They make it possible for you to add peripheral hardware to your Apple IIe without having to change your programs, provided that your programs follow normal practice for data input and output.

### Peripheral-card I/O Space

Each expansion slot has the exclusive use of sixteen memory locations for data input and output in the memory space beginning at location \$C090. Slot 1 uses locations \$C090 through \$C09F, slot 2 uses locations \$C0A0 through \$C0AF, and so on through location \$C0FF, as shown in Table 6-1.

These memory locations are used for different I/O functions, depending on the design of each peripheral card. Whenever the Apple IIe addresses one of the sixteen I/O locations allocated to a particular slot, the signal on pin 41 of that slot, called **DEVICE SELECT'**, switches to the active (low) state. This signal can be used to enable logic on the peripheral card that uses the four low-order address lines to determine which of its sixteen I/O locations is being accessed.

**Table 6-1** Peripheral-card I/O Memory Locations

Note: The enabling signal is marked with a prime, to indicate that it is an active-low signal.

Slot	Locations	Enabled by
1	\$C090-\$C09F	DEVICE SELECT'
2	\$C0A0-\$C0AF	DEVICE SELECT'
3	\$C0B0-\$C0BF	DEVICE SELECT'
4	\$C0C0-\$C0CF	DEVICE SELECT'
5	\$C0D0-\$C0DF	DEVICE SELECT'
6	\$C0E0-\$C0EF	DEVICE SELECT'
7	\$C0F0-\$C0FF	DEVICE SELECT'

### Peripheral-card ROM Space

One 256-byte page of memory space is allocated to each peripheral card. This space is normally used for read-only memory (ROM or PROM) on the card with driver programs that control the operation of the peripheral device connected to the card.

The page of memory allocated to each expansion slot begins at location \$Cn00, where n is the slot number, as shown in Table 6-2 and Figure 6-3. Whenever the Apple IIe addresses one of the

256 ROM memory locations allocated to a particular slot, the signal on pin 1 of that slot, called *I/O SELECT'*, switches to the active (low) state. This signal enables the ROM or PROM devices on the card, and the eight low-order address lines determine which of the 256 memory locations is being accessed.

**Table 6-2** Peripheral-card ROM Memory Locations

Note: The enabling signal is marked with a prime, to indicate that it is an active-low signal.

Slot	Locations	Enabled by
1	\$C100-\$C1FF	<i>I/O SELECT'</i>
2	\$C200-\$C2FF	<i>I/O SELECT'</i>
3	\$C300-\$C3FF	<i>I/O SELECT'</i>
4	\$C400-\$C4FF	<i>I/O SELECT'</i>
5	\$C500-\$C5FF	<i>I/O SELECT'</i>
6	\$C600-\$C6FF	<i>I/O SELECT'</i>
7	\$C700-\$C7FF	<i>I/O SELECT'</i>

If there is an 80-column text card installed in the auxiliary slot, some of the functions normally associated with slot 3 are performed by the 80-column text card and the built-in 80-column firmware. With a 80-column text card installed, the *I/O SELECT'* signal is not available for slot 3, so firmware in ROM on a card in slot 3 will not run.

### **Expansion ROM Space**

In addition to the small areas of ROM memory allocated to each expansion slot, peripheral cards can use the 2K-byte memory space from \$C800 to \$CFFF for larger programs in ROM or PROM. This memory space is called expansion ROM space (see the memory map in Figure 6-3). Besides being larger, the expansion ROM memory space is always at the same locations regardless of which slot is occupied by the card, making programs that occupy this memory space easier to write. (See the section "I/O Programming Suggestions", below.)

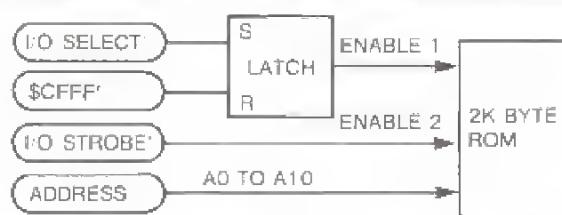
This memory space is available to any peripheral card that needs it. More than one peripheral card can have expansion ROM on it, but only one of them can be active at a time.

Each peripheral card that uses expansion ROM must have a circuit on it to enable the ROM. The circuit does this by a two-stage process: first, it sets a flip-flop when the I/O SELECT' signal, pin 1 on the slot, becomes active (low); second, it enables the expansion ROM devices when the I/O STROBE' signal, pin 20 on the slot, becomes active (low). Figure 6-1 shows a typical ROM-enable circuit.

The I/O SELECT' signal on a particular slot becomes active whenever the Apple IIe's 6502 microprocessor addresses a location in the 256-byte ROM address space allocated to that slot. The I/O STROBE' signal on all of the expansion slots becomes active (low) when the 6502 addresses a location in the expansion-ROM memory space, \$CB00-\$CFFF. The I/O STROBE' signal is used to enable the expansion-ROM devices on a peripheral card (see Figure 6-1).

If there is an 80-column text card installed in the auxiliary slot, some of the functions normally associated with slot 3 are performed by the text card and the built-in 80-column firmware. With the text card installed, the I/O STROBE' signal is not available on slot 3, so firmware in expansion ROM on a card in slot 3 will not run.

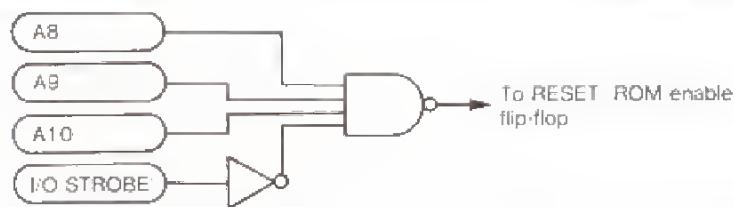
Figure 6-1 Expansion ROM Enable Circuit



A program on a peripheral card can get exclusive use of the expansion ROM memory space by referring to location \$CFFF in its initialization phase. This location is special: all peripheral cards that use expansion ROM must recognize a reference to \$CFFF as a signal to reset their ROM-enable flip-flops and disable their expansion ROMs. Of course, doing so also disables the expansion ROM on the card that is about to use it, but the next instruction in the initialization code sets the flip-flop on the expansion-ROM enable circuit on the card. Once this has been done, this card has exclusive use of the expansion memory space and its program can jump directly into the expansion ROM.

As described above, the expansion-ROM disable circuit resets the enable flip-flop whenever the 6502 addresses location \$CFFF.

**Figure 6-2** ROM Disable Address Decoding



To do this, the peripheral card must detect the presence of \$CFFF on the address bus. You can use the I/O STROBE\* signal for part of the address decoding, since it is active for addresses from \$C800 through \$CFFF. If you can afford to sacrifice some ROM space, you can simplify the address decoding even further and save circuitry on the card. For example, if you give up the last 256 bytes of expansion ROM space, your disable circuit only needs to detect addresses of the form \$CFxx, and you can use the minimal disable-decoding circuitry shown in Figure 6-2.

### Peripheral-card RAM Space

There are 56 bytes of main memory allocated to the peripheral cards, eight bytes per card, as shown in Table 6-3. These 56 locations are actually in the RAM memory reserved for the text and low-resolution graphics displays, but these particular locations are not displayed on the screen and their contents are not changed by the built-in output routine CDUT1. Programs in ROM on peripheral cards use these locations for temporary data storage.

**Table 6-3** Peripheral-card RAM Memory Locations

\*Note: The RAM locations normally allocated to slot 3 are taken over by any card installed in the auxiliary slot.

Base Address	Slot Number						
	1	2	3*	4	5	6	7
\$0478	\$0479	\$047A	\$047B*	\$047C	\$047D	\$047E	\$047F
\$04F8	\$04F9	\$04FA	\$04FB*	\$04FC	\$04FD	\$04FE	\$04FF
\$0578	\$0579	\$057A	\$057B*	\$057C	\$057D	\$057E	\$057F
\$05F8	\$05F9	\$05FA	\$05FB*	\$05FC	\$05FD	\$05FE	\$05FF
\$0678	\$0679	\$067A	\$067B*	\$067C	\$067D	\$067E	\$067F
\$06F8	\$06F9	\$06FA	\$06FB*	\$06FC	\$06FD	\$06FE	\$06FF
\$0778	\$0779	\$077A	\$077B*	\$077C	\$077D	\$077E	\$077F
\$07F8	\$07F9	\$07FA	\$07FB*	\$07FC	\$07FD	\$07FE	\$07FF

A program on a peripheral card can use the eight base addresses shown in the table to access the eight RAM locations allocated for its use, as shown in the next section, "I/O Programming Suggestions".

## I/O Programming Suggestions

A program in ROM on a peripheral card should work no matter which slot the card occupies. If the program includes a jump to an absolute location in one of the 256-byte memory spaces, then the card will only work when it is plugged into the slot that uses that memory space. If you are writing the program for a peripheral card that will be used by many people, you should avoid placing such a restriction on the use of the card.

To function properly no matter which slot a peripheral card is installed in, the program in the card's 256-byte memory space must not make any absolute references to itself. Instead of using jump instructions, you should force conditions on branch instructions, which use relative addressing.

The first thing a peripheral-card subroutine should do is to save the contents of the 6502's registers. One way to do this is to use the monitor subroutine `IOSAVE`. This subroutine, which starts at location `$FF4A`, stores the registers in zero-page memory locations `$45-$49`. A companion subroutine, `IOREST`, restores the registers from these memory locations. Your program should call `IOREST`, which starts at location `$FF3F`, just before it returns control to the program that called it.

This method of saving the registers is convenient, but it is not always safe. If a second subroutine calls `IOSAVE`, or if an interrupt occurs, the new register contents get saved in the same locations, and the old ones get destroyed. It is safer, though somewhat slower, to save the registers on the stack, and restore them just before returning control to the calling program.

Most single-character I/O is done via the 6502's accumulator. A character being output through your subroutine will be in the accumulator with its high bit set when your subroutine is called. Likewise, if your subroutine is performing character input, it must leave the character in the accumulator with its high bit set when it returns to the calling program.

## Finding the Slot Number

The memory addresses used by a program on a peripheral card differ depending on which expansion slot the card is installed in. Before it can refer to any of those addresses, the program must somehow determine the correct slot number. One way to do this is to execute a JSR (Jump to Subroutine) to a location with an RTS (Return from Subroutine) instruction in it, and then derive the slot number from the return address saved on the stack, as shown in the following example.

```
PHP           ; save status
SEI           ; inhibit interrupts
JSR $FF5B    ; -> a known RTS instruction
TSX           ; get high byte of the...
LDA $0100,X   ; ...return address from stack
AND #$0F     ; low-order digit is slot no.
PLP           ; restore status
```

The slot number can now be used in addressing the memory allocated to the peripheral card, as shown below.

## I/O Addressing

Once your peripheral-card program has the slot number, it can use it to address the I/O locations allocated to the slot. Table 6-4 shows how these locations are related to sixteen base addresses starting with \$C080. Notice that the difference between the base address and the desired I/O location has the form \$n0, where n is the slot number. Starting with the slot number in the accumulator, the following example computes this difference by four left shifts, then loads it into an index register and uses the base address to specify one of sixteen I/O locations.

```
ASL           ; get n into...
ASL           ;
ASL           ;
ASL           ; ...high-order nybble...
TAX           ; ...of index register.
LDA $C080,X   ; load from first I/O location
```

You must make sure that you get an appropriate value into the index register when you address I/O locations this way. For example, starting with 1 in the accumulator, the instructions in the above example perform an LDA from location \$C090, the first I/O location allocated to slot 1. If the value in the accumulator had been 0, the LDA would have accessed location \$C080, thereby setting the soft switch that selects the second bank of RAM at location \$D000 and enables it for reading (see Chapter 5).

**Table 6-4** Peripheral-card I/O Base Addresses

Base Address	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Connector Number							
\$C080	\$C090	\$C0A0	\$C0B0	\$C0C0	\$C0D0	\$C0E0	\$C0F0
\$C081	\$C091	\$C0A1	\$C0B1	\$C0C1	\$C0D1	\$C0E1	\$C0F1
\$C082	\$C092	\$C0A2	\$C0B2	\$C0C2	\$C0D2	\$C0E2	\$C0F2
\$C083	\$C093	\$C0A3	\$C0B3	\$C0C3	\$C0D3	\$C0E3	\$C0F3
\$C084	\$C094	\$C0A4	\$C0B4	\$C0C4	\$C0D4	\$C0E4	\$C0F4
\$C085	\$C095	\$C0A5	\$C0B5	\$C0C5	\$C0D5	\$C0E5	\$C0F5
\$C086	\$C096	\$C0A6	\$C0B6	\$C0C6	\$C0D6	\$C0E6	\$C0F6
\$C087	\$C097	\$C0A7	\$C0B7	\$C0C7	\$C0D7	\$C0E7	\$C0F7
\$C088	\$C098	\$C0A8	\$C0B8	\$C0C8	\$C0D8	\$C0E8	\$C0F8
\$C089	\$C099	\$C0A9	\$C0B9	\$C0C9	\$C0D9	\$C0E9	\$C0F9
\$C08A	\$C09A	\$C0AA	\$C0BA	\$C0CA	\$C0DA	\$C0EA	\$C0FA
\$C08B	\$C09B	\$C0AB	\$C0BB	\$C0CB	\$C0DB	\$C0EB	\$C0FB
\$C08C	\$C09C	\$C0AC	\$C0BC	\$C0CC	\$C0DC	\$C0EC	\$C0FC
\$C08D	\$C09D	\$C0AD	\$C0BD	\$C0CD	\$C0DD	\$C0ED	\$C0FD
\$C08E	\$C09E	\$C0AE	\$C0BE	\$C0CE	\$C0DE	\$C0EE	\$C0FE
\$C08F	\$C09F	\$C0AF	\$C0BF	\$C0CF	\$C0DF	\$C0EF	\$C0FF

### RAM Addressing

A program on a peripheral card can use the eight base addresses shown in Table 6-3 to access the eight RAM locations allocated for its use. The program does this by putting its slot number into the Y index register and using indexed addressing mode with the base addresses. The base addresses can be defined as constants because they are the same no matter which slot the peripheral card occupies.

If you start with the correct slot number in the accumulator (by using the example shown earlier), the following example uses all eight RAM locations allocated to the slot.

```
TAY
LDA  $0478,Y
STA  $04F8,Y
LDA  $0578,Y
STA  $05F8,Y
LDA  $0678,Y
STA  $06F8,Y
LDA  $0778,Y
STA  $07F8,Y
```

#### Warning

Peripheral card programs must not store data at the base-address locations themselves; the RAM at those locations is used by the Disk Operating System. DOS stores the first byte of the ROM location of the expansion slot that is currently active (\$Cn) in location \$7F8, and the first byte of the ROM location of the slot holding the controller card for the startup disk drive in location \$5F8.

### *Changing the Standard I/O Links*

There are two pairs of locations in the Apple IIe that are used for controlling character input and output. They are called the I/O links (see Chapter 3). In a Apple IIe running without a Disk Operating System, the I/O links normally contain the starting addresses of the standard input and output routines KEYIN and COUT1. If a disk operating system is running, one or both of the links will hold the addresses of the DOS input and output routines.

The link at locations \$36 and \$37 (decimal 54 and 55) is called CSW, for Character output Switch. Individually, location \$36 is called CSWL (CSW Low) and location \$37 is called CSWH (CSW High). This link holds the starting address of the subroutine the Apple IIe is currently using for single-character output. This address is normally \$FDF0, the address of routine COUT1, described in Chapter 3.

When you issue a PR#n from BASIC or an n CONTROL -P from the Monitor, the Apple IIe changes this link address to the first address in the ROM memory space allocated to slot number n. That address has the form \$Ch00. Subsequent calls for character output are thus transferred to the program on the peripheral card. That program can use the instruction sequences given above to find its slot number and use the I/O and RAM locations allocated to it. When it is finished, the program can execute an RTS (Return

from Subroutine) instruction to return control to the calling program, or jump to the output routine `COUT1` at location `$FDF0` to display the output character (which must be in the accumulator) on the screen, then let `COUT1` return to the calling program.

A similar link at locations `$38` and `$39` (decimal `56` and `57`) is called `KSW`, for Keyboard Input Switch. Individually, location `$38` is called `KSWL` (for `KSW` Low) and location `$39` is called `KSWH` (`KSW` High). This link holds the starting address of the routine currently being used for single-character input. This address is normally `$FD1B`, the starting address of the standard input routine `KEYIN` (see Chapter 3).

When you issue an `IN#n` command from BASIC or an `n [CONTROL]-K` from the monitor, the Apple IIe changes this link address to `$Cn00`, the beginning of the ROM memory space that is allocated to slot number `n`. Subsequent calls for character input are thus transferred to the program on the peripheral card. That program can use the instruction sequences given above to find its slot number and use the I/O and RAM locations allocated to it. The program should put the input character, with its high bit set, into the accumulator and execute an `RTS` (Return from Subroutine) instruction to return control to the program that requested input.

When the Disk Operating System (DOS) is running, one or both of the standard I/O links hold addresses of the Disk Operating System's input and output routines. The DOS has internal locations that hold the addresses of the character input and output routines that are currently active.

If a program that is running with DOS changes the standard link addresses, either directly or via `IN#` and `PR#` commands, DOS is disconnected from the system.

To avoid disconnecting DOS each time they initiate I/O to a slot, BASIC programs that run with DOS must always issue an `IN#` or a `PR#` command from inside a `PRINT` statement that starts with a `[CONTROL]-D` character. For assembly-language programs, there is a DOS subroutine call to use when changing the link addresses. After changing `CSW` or `KSW`, the program calls this subroutine at location `$3EA` (decimal `1002`). The subroutine transfers the link address to a location inside DOS and then restores the DOS address in the standard link location. Refer to the section on input and output link registers in the *DOS Manual* for further details.

## ***Using Interrupts***

Although programs running on the Apple IIe do not normally use interrupts, it is possible to do so. To use interrupts on the Apple IIe, your peripheral card must be able to send an interrupt request (IRQ<sup>\*</sup>) to the 6502 microprocessor, and you must store the address of your interrupt-handling routine in the user interrupt vector, as described below.

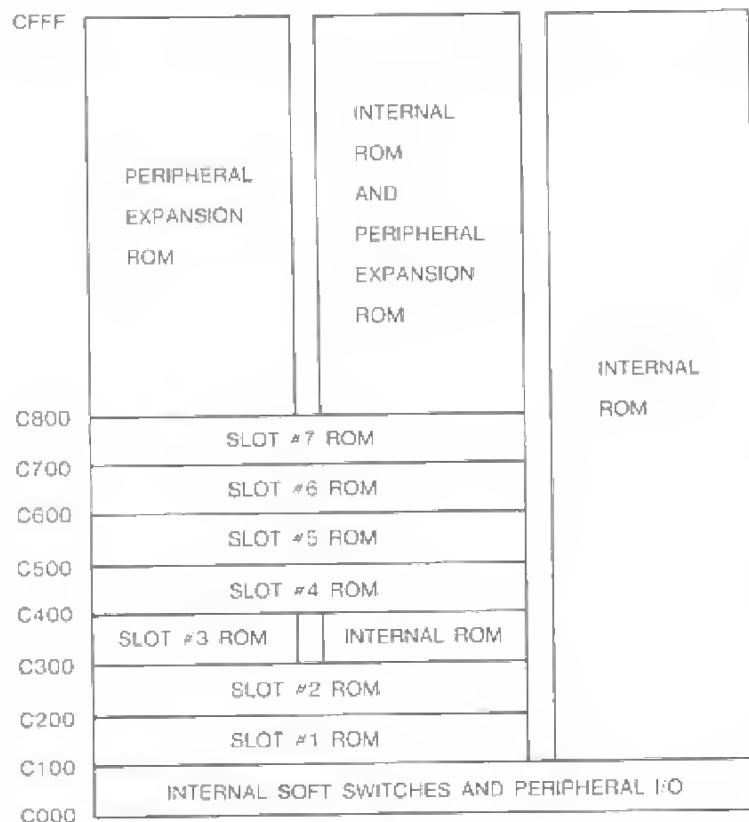
Interrupt priority is handled by a daisy-chain arrangement using two pins, INT IN and INT OUT, on each expansion slot. As described in Chapter 7, each peripheral card breaks the chain when it makes an interrupt request. On peripheral cards that don't use interrupts, these pins should be connected together. The daisy chain gives priority to the peripheral card in slot 7: if this card opens the connection between INT IN and INT OUT, or if there is no card in this slot, interrupt requests from cards in slots 1 through 6 can't get through. Similarly, slot 6 controls IRQ from slots 1 through 5, and so on down the line.

When the IRQ<sup>\*</sup> line on the 6502 microprocessor is activated (pulled low), the 6502 transfers control through the vector in locations \$FFFE-\$FFFF. This vector is the address of the Monitor's interrupt handler, which determines whether the request is due to an external IRQ or a BRK instruction and transfers control to the appropriate routine via the vectors stored in memory page 3. The BRK vector is in locations \$3F0-\$3F1 and the IRQ vector is in locations \$3FE-\$3FF (see Table 4-10). The Monitor normally stores the address of its reset routine in the IRQ vector; you should substitute the address of your program's interrupt-handling routine.

## ***Other Uses of I/O Memory Space***

The portion of memory space from location \$C000 through \$CFFF (decimal 49152 through 53247) is normally allocated to I/O and program memory on the peripheral cards, but there are two other functions that also use this memory space: the built-in self-test firmware and the 80-column display firmware. The soft switches that control the allocation of this memory space are described below.

Figure 6-3 I/O Memory Map



### Switching I/O Memory

The built-in firmware uses two soft switches to control the allocation of the I/O memory space from \$C000 to \$CFFF. The locations of these soft switches, SLOTCXROM and SLOTC3ROM, are given in Table 6-5.

Like the display switches described in Chapter 2, these soft switches share their locations with the keyboard data and strobe functions. The switches are activated only by writing, and the states can be determined only by reading, as indicated in Table 6-6.

When SLOTC3ROM is on, the 256-byte ROM area at \$C300 is available to a peripheral card in slot 3, which is the slot normally used for a terminal interface. If a card is installed in the auxiliary slot when you turn on the power or reset the Apple IIe, the SLOTC3ROM switch is turned off. Turning SLOTC3ROM off disables

Table 6-5 I/O Memory Switches

Name	Function	Location		Notes
		Hex	Decimal	
SLOTC3ROM	Slot ROM at \$C300	\$C00B	49163	-16373 Write
	Internal ROM at \$C300	\$C00A	49162	-16374 Write
	Read SLOT C3 ROM switch	\$C017	49175	-16361 Read
SLOTCXROM	Slot ROM at \$Cx00	\$C007	49159	-16377 Write
	Internal ROM at \$Cx00	\$C006	49158	-16378 Write
	Read SLOT CX ROM switch	\$C015	49173	-16363 Read

peripheral-card ROM in slot 3 and enables the built-in 80-column firmware, as shown in Figure 6-3. The 80-column firmware is assigned to slot-3 address space because slot 3 is normally used with a terminal interface, so the built-in firmware will work with programs that use slot 3 this way.

Installing an 80-column text card in the auxiliary slot makes it impossible to run any peripheral card that has built-in firmware in slot 3. If an 80-column text card is not installed, a peripheral card in slot 3 will work properly.

The bus and I/O signals are always available to a peripheral card in slot 3, even when the 80-column hardware and firmware are operating. Thus it is always possible to use this slot for any I/O accessory that does not have built-in firmware.

When SLOTCXROM is active (high), the I/O memory space from \$C100 to \$C7FF is allocated to the expansion slots, as described previously. Setting SLOTCXROM inactive (low) disables the peripheral-card ROM and selects built-in ROM in all of the I/O memory space except the part from \$C000 to \$C0FF (used for soft switches and data I/O), as shown in Figure 6-3. In addition to the 80-column firmware at \$C300 and \$C800, the built-in ROM includes firmware that performs the self-test of the Apple IIe's hardware.

Setting SLOTCXROM low enables built-in ROM in all of the I/O memory space (except the soft-switch area), including the \$C300 space, which contains the 80-column firmware.

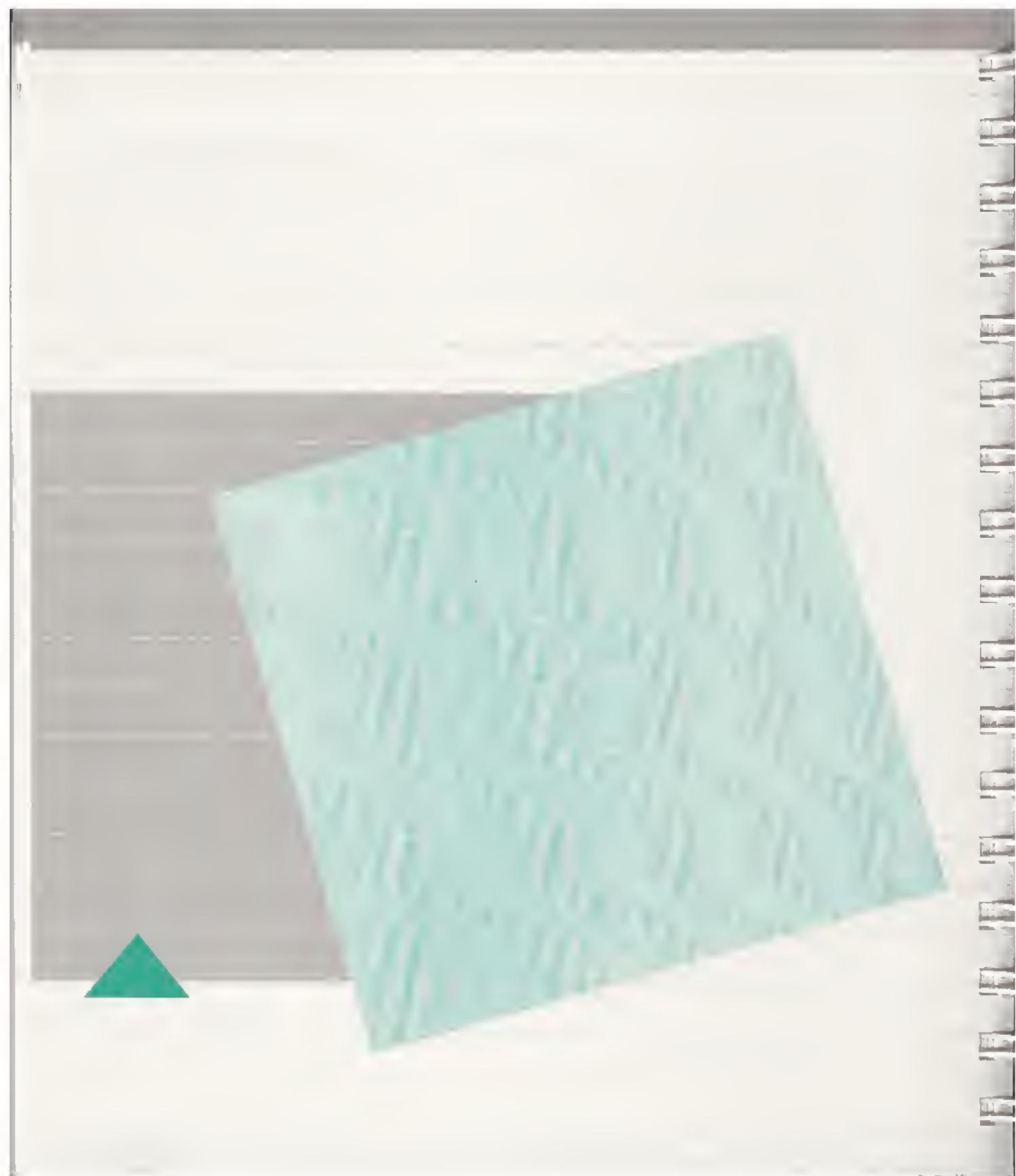
---

- 137 Environmental Specifications
- 138 The Power Supply
- 139 The Power Connector
- 140 The 6502 Microprocessor
- 141 6502 Timing
- 143 The Custom Integrated Circuits
- 143 The Memory Management Unit
- 145 The Input/Output Unit
- 147 The PAL Circuit
- 148 Memory Addressing
- 148 ROM Addressing
- 149 RAM Addressing
- 149 Dynamic-RAM Refreshment
- 151 Dynamic-RAM Timing
- 152 The Video Display
- 153 The Video Counters
- 154 Display Memory Addressing
- 154 Display Address Mapping
- 158 Video Display Modes
- 158 Text Displays
- 160 Low-resolution Display
- 161 High-resolution Display
- 163 Video Output Signals
- 164 Built-in I/O Circuits
- 164 The Keyboard
- 165 Connecting a Keypad
- 166 Cassette I/O
- 166 The Speaker
- 167 Game I/O Signals

## *Hardware Implementation*

---

- 169 Expanding the Apple IIe
- 169 The Expansion Slots
- 169 The Peripheral Address Bus
- 170 The Peripheral Data Bus
- 170 Loading and Driving Rules
- 170 Interrupt and DMA Daisy Chains
- 174 Video Signals on Slot 7
- 174 The Auxiliary Slot
- 175 80-column Display Signals



## ***Hardware Implementation***

Most of this manual describes functions — what the Apple IIe does. This chapter, on the other hand, describes objects: the pieces of hardware the Apple IIe uses to carry out its functions. If you are designing a piece of peripheral hardware to attach to the Apple IIe, or if you just want to know more about how the Apple IIe is built, you should study this chapter.

### ***Environmental Specifications***

The Apple IIe is quite sturdy when used in the way it was intended. Table 7-1 defines the conditions under which the Apple IIe is designed to function properly.

**Table 7-1** Summary of Environmental Specifications

Operating Temperature: 0° to 45°C (30° to 115°F)

Relative Humidity: 5% to 85%

Line Voltage: 107 to 132 VAC

You should treat the Apple IIe with the same kind of care as any other electrical appliance. You should protect it from physical violence, such as hammer blows or defenestration. You should protect the mechanical keyboard and the electrical connectors inside the case from spilled liquids, especially those with dissolved contaminants, such as coffee and cola drinks.

In normal operation, enough air flows through the slots in the case to keep the insides from getting too hot, although some of the parts inside the Apple IIe normally get rather warm to the touch. If you manage to overheat your Apple IIe, by blocking the ventilation slots in the top and bottom for example, the first symptom will be erratic operation. The memory devices in the Apple IIe are sensitive to heat: when they get too hot, they

occasionally change a bit of data. The exact result depends on what kind of program you are running and on just which bit of memory is affected.

## The Power Supply

The power supply in the Apple IIe operates on normal household AC power and provides enough low-voltage electrical power for the built-in electronics plus a full complement of peripheral cards, including disk controller cards and communications interfaces. The basic specifications of the power supply are listed in Table 7-2.

The Apple IIe's power cord should be plugged into a three-wire 110- to 120-volt outlet. You must connect the Apple IIe to a grounded outlet or to a good earth ground. Also, the line voltage must be in the range given in Table 7-2. If you try to operate the Apple IIe from a power source with more than 140 volts, you will damage the power supply.

**Table 7-2** Power Supply Specifications

\*Intermittent operation: The Apple IIe can safely operate for up to twenty minutes at the higher load if followed by at least ten minutes at normal load.

Line voltage:	107V to 132V AC
Maximum power consumption:	60W continuous 80W intermittent*
Supply voltages:	+5V $\pm 3\%$ +11.8V $\pm 6\%$ -5.2V $\pm 10\%$ -12V $\pm 10\%$
Maximum supply currents:	+5V: 2.5A +12V: 1.5A continuous, 2.5A intermittent* -5V: 250mA -12V: 250mA
Maximum case temperature:	55°C (130°F)

The Apple IIe uses a custom-designed switching-type power supply. It is small and lightweight, and it generates less heat than other types of power supplies do.

The Apple IIe's power supply works by converting the AC line voltage to DC and using this DC voltage to power a variable-frequency oscillator. The oscillator drives a small transformer with many separate windings to produce the different voltages required. A circuit compares the voltage of the +5-volt supply with a reference voltage and feeds an error signal back to the

oscillator circuit. The oscillator circuit uses the error signal to control the frequency of its oscillation and keep the output voltages in their normal ranges.

The power supply includes circuitry to protect itself and the other electronic parts of the Apple IIe by turning off all four supply voltages whenever it detects one of the following malfunctions:

- any supply voltage short-circuited to ground;
- the power-supply cable disconnected;
- any supply voltage outside the normal range.

Any time one of these malfunctions occurs, the protection circuit stops the oscillator, and all the output voltages drop to zero. After about half a second, the oscillator starts up again. If the malfunction is still occurring, the protection circuit stops the oscillator again. The power supply will continue to start and stop this way until the malfunction is corrected or the power is turned off.

#### **Warning**

If you think the power supply is broken, do not attempt to repair it yourself. The power supply is in a sealed enclosure because some of its circuits are connected directly to the power line. Special equipment is needed to repair the power supply safely, so see your Apple dealer for service.

#### ***The Power Connector***

The cable from the power supply is connected to the main circuit board by a six-pin connector with a strain-relief catch. The connector pins are identified in Table 7-3 and Figure 7-14d.

**Table 7-3** Power Connector Signal Specifications

Pin Number	Name	Description
1,2	Ground	Common electrical ground
3	+5V	+5V from power supply
4	+12V	+12V from power supply
5	-12V	-12V from power supply
6	-5V	-5V from power supply

## The 6502 Microprocessor

The Apple IIe uses a 6502B microprocessor as its central processing unit (CPU). The 6502B in the Apple IIe runs at a clock rate of 1.023 MHz and performs up to 500,000 eight-bit operations per second. You should not use the clock rate as a criterion for comparing different types of microprocessors. The 6502 has a simpler instruction cycle than most other microprocessors and it uses instruction pipelining for faster processing. The speed of the 6502 with a 1MHz clock is equivalent to other types of microprocessors with clock rates up to 2.5MHz.

The 6502 has a sixteen-bit address bus, giving it an address space of 64K (2 to the sixteenth power or 65536) bytes. The Apple IIe uses special techniques to address a total of more than 64K: see the sections "Bank-switched Memory" and "Auxiliary Memory and Firmware" in Chapter 4 and the section "Switching I/O Memory" in Chapter 6.

**Table 7-4** 6502 Microprocessor Specifications

Type:	6502B
Register complement:	Accumulator (A) Index Registers (X, Y) Stack Pointer (S) Processor Status (P)
Register size:	Eight bits
Data bus:	Eight bits wide
Address bus:	Sixteen bits wide
Address range:	65,536 (64K)
Interrupts:	IRQ (maskable) NMI (nonmaskable) BRK (programmed)
Operating voltage:	+5V ( $\pm 5\%$ )
Power dissipation:	500mW (typical)

## 6502 Timing

The operation of the Apple IIe is controlled by a set of synchronous timing signals, sometimes called *clock signals*. In electronics, the word *clock* is used to identify signals that control the timing of circuit operations. The Apple IIe doesn't contain the kind of clock you tell time by, although its internal timing is accurate enough that a program running on the Apple IIe can simulate such a clock.

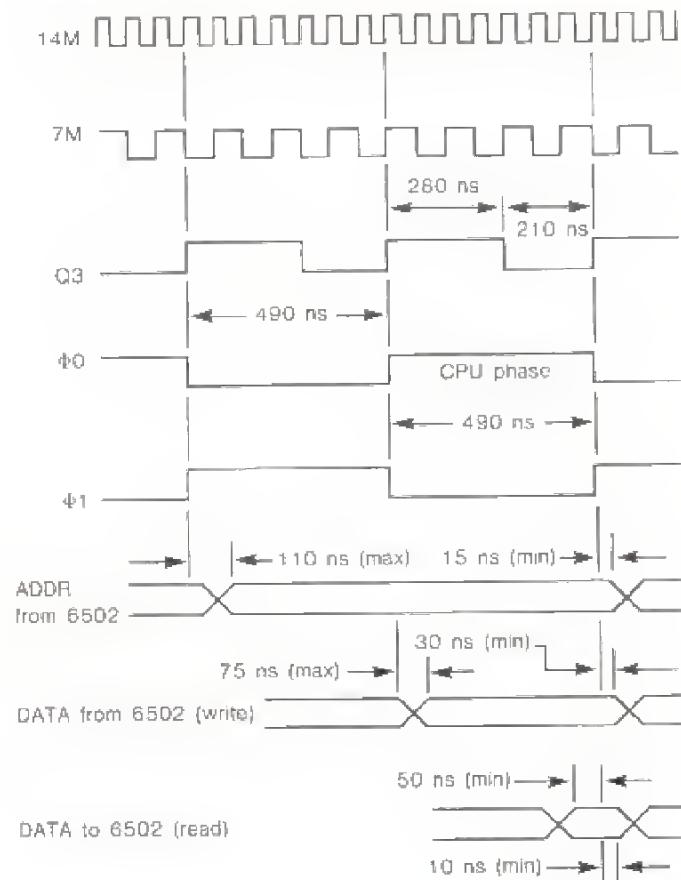
The frequency of the oscillator that generates the master timing signal is 14.31818 MHz. Circuitry in the Apple IIe uses this clock signal, called  $\text{14M}$ , to produce all the other timing signals. These timing signals perform two major tasks: controlling the computing functions, and generating the video display. The timing signals directly involved with the operation of the 6502 are described in this section. Other timing signals are described in the sections "RAM Addressing", "Video Display Modes", and "The Expansion Slots".

The main 6502 timing signals are listed in Table 7-5, and their relationships are diagrammed in Figure 7-1. The 6502 clock signals are  $\phi 1$  and  $\phi 0$ , complementary signals at a frequency of 1.02273 MHz. If you need more information about the 6502 itself, refer to the *Synertek Hardware Manual* (Apple product number A2L0002). The Apple IIe signal named  $\phi 0$  is equivalent to the signal called  $\phi 2$  in the hardware manual (it isn't identical; it's a tiny bit early).

Table 7-5 6502 Timing Signal Descriptions

Signal Name	Description
$\text{14M}$	Master oscillator, 14.31818 MHz; also 80-column dot clock.
$\text{7M}$	Intermediate timing signal and 40-column dot clock.
$\text{Q3}$	Intermediate timing signal, 2.04545 MHz with asymmetrical duty cycle.
$\phi 0$	Phase 0 of 6502 clock, 1.022727 MHz; Complement of $\phi 1$ .
$\phi 1$	Phase 1 of 6502 clock, 1.022727 MHz; Complement of $\phi 0$ .

Figure 7-1 6502 Timing Signals



The operations of the 6502 are related to the clock signals in a simple way: address during  $\phi_1$ , data during  $\phi_0$ . The 6502 puts an address on the address bus during  $\phi_1$ . This address is valid not later than 110 nanoseconds after  $\phi_1$  goes high and remains valid through all of  $\phi_0$ . The 6502 reads or writes data during  $\phi_0$ . If the 6502 is writing, the read/write signal is low during  $\phi_0$  and the 6502 puts data on the data bus. The data is valid not later than 75 nanoseconds after  $\phi_0$  goes high. If the 6502 is reading, the read/write signal remains high. Data on the data bus must be valid no later than 50 nanoseconds before the end of  $\phi_0$ .

## The Custom Integrated Circuits

Most of the circuitry that controls memory and I/O addressing in the Apple IIe is in three custom integrated circuits called the Memory Management Unit (MMU), the Input-Output Unit (IOU), and the Programmed Array Logic device (PAL). The soft switches used for controlling the various I/O and addressing modes of the Apple IIe are addressable flags inside the MMU and the IOU. The functions of these two devices are not as independent as their names suggest; working together, they generate all of the addressing signals. For example, the MMU generates the address signals for the CPU, while the IOU generates similar address signals for the video display.

Figure 7-2 The MMU Pinouts

GND	1	40	A1
A0	2	39	A2
Φ0	3	38	A3
Q3	4	37	A4
PRAS'	5	36	A5
RA0	6	35	A6
RA1	7	34	A7
RA2	8	33	A8
RA3	9	32	A9
RA4	10	31	A10
RA5	11	30	A11
RA6	12	29	A12
RA7	13	28	A13
R/W'	14	27	A14
INH'	15	26	A15
DMA'	16	25	+5V
ENBO'	17	24	Cxxx
KBD'	18	23	RAMEN'
ROMEN2'	19	22	R1W' 245
ROMEN1	20	21	MD7

### The Memory Management Unit

The circuitry inside the MMU implements these soft switches, which are described in the following chapters:

- Page 2 display (PAGE2): Chapter 2
- Hi-res mode (HIRES): Chapter 2
- Store to 80-column card (80STORE): Chapter 2
- Select bank 2: Chapter 4
- Enable bank-switched RAM: Chapter 4
- Read auxiliary memory (RAMRD): Chapter 4
- Write auxiliary memory (RAMWRT): Chapter 4
- Auxiliary stack and zero page (ALTZP): Chapter 4
- Slot ROM for connector #3 (SLOTC3ROM): Chapter 6
- Slot ROM in I/O space (SLOTCXROM): Chapter 6

The 64K dynamic RAMs used in the Apple IIe use a multiplexed address, as described below in the section "Dynamic-RAM Timing". The MMU generates this multiplexed address for memory reading and writing by the 6502 CPU.

**Table 7-6** The MMU Signal Descriptions

Pin Number	Name	Description
1	GND	Power and signal common
2	A0	6502 address input
40-26	A1-A15	6502 address input
3	$\phi_0$	Clock phase 0
4	Q3	Timing signal
5	PRAS'	Memory Row-address strobe
6-13	RA0-RA7	Multiplexed address output
14	R/W'	6502 read-write control signal
15	TNH'	Inhibits main memory
16	DMA'	Controls data bus for DMA transfers
17	EN80'	Enables auxiliary RAM
18	KBD'	Enables keyboard data bit 0-6
19	ROMEN2'	Enables built-in firmware ROM #2
20	ROMEN1'	Enables built-in firmware ROM #1
21	MD7	State of MMU flags
22	RW'245	Controls 74LS245 data-bus buffer
23	RAMEN'	Enables main RAM
24	CXXX	Enables peripheral-card memory
25	+5V	Power

Figure 7-3 The IOU Pinouts

GND	1	40	H0
GR	2	39	SYNC
SEGA	3	38	WNDW'
SEGB	4	37	CLRGAT
VC	5	36	RA10
BOVID	6	35	RA9
CASSO	7	34	VID6
SPKR	8	33	VID7
MD7	9	32	KSTRB
AN0	10	31	AKD
AN1	11	30	COxx
AN2	12	29	A6
AN3	13	28	+5V
R/W	14	27	Q3
RESET	15	26	Φ0
(n.c.)	16	25	PRAS
RA0	17	24	RA7
RA1	18	23	RA6
RA2	19	22	RA5
RA3	20	21	RA4

## The Input/Output Unit

The circuitry inside the Input/Output Unit (IOU) implements the following soft switches, all described in Chapter 2:

- Page 2 display (PAGE2)
- Hi-res mode (HIRES)
- Text mode (TEXT)
- Mixed mode (MIXED)
- 80-column display (80COL)
- Character-set select (ALTCHARSET)
- Any-key-down
- Annunciators
- Vertical blanking (VBL)

The 64K dynamic RAMs used in the Apple IIe require a multiplexed address, as described below in the section "Dynamic-RAM Timing". The IOU generates this multiplexed address for the data transfers required for display and memory refresh during clock phase 1. The way this address is generated is described below in the section "Video Display Generation".

**Table 7-7** The IOU Signal Descriptions

Note: Pin 16 is not connected.

Pin Number	Name	Description
1	GND	Power and signal common
2	GR	Graphics mode enable
3,4	SEGA, SEGB	Display vertical counter bits
5	VC	Display vertical counter bit
6	80VID'	80-column video enable
7	CASSO	Cassette output signal
8	SPKR	Speaker output signal
9	MD7	Internal flags to data bus
10-13	AN0-AN3	Annunciator outputs
14	R/W'	6502 read-write control signal
15	RESET'	Power on and reset output
17-24	RA0-RA7	Multiplexed RAM address (phase 0)
25	PRAS'	Row-address strobe (phase 0)
26	60	Master clock phase 0
27	Q3	Intermediate timing signal
28	+5V	Power
29	A6	Address bit 6 from 6502
30	COXX'	I/O address enable
31	AKD	Any-key-down signal
32	KSTRB	Keyboard strobe signal
33, 34	VID7, VID6	Video display control bits
35, 36	RA9', RA10'	Video display control bits
37	CLRGATE'	Color-burst gate (enable)
38	WNDW'	Display blanking signal
39	SYNC'	Display synchronization signal
40	H0	Display horizontal timing signal

## The PAL Circuit

A Programmed Array Logic device, type PAL 16R8, generates several timing and control signals in the Apple 11e. These signals are listed in Table 7-8.

Table 7-8 The PAL Signal Descriptions

Pin Number	Name	Description
1	14M	14.31818 MHz master timing signal
2	7M	7.15909 MHz timing signal
3	3.58M	3.579545 MHz timing signal
4	H0	Horizontal video timing signal
5	VID7	Video data bit 7
6	SEGB	Video timing signal
7	GR	Video display graphics-mode enable
8	RAMEN'	RAM enable (CAS enable)
9	80VID'	Enable 80-column display mode
10	GND	Power and signal common
11	ENTMG	Enable master timing
12	LDPS'	Video shift-register load enable
13	VID7M	Video dot clock, 7 or 14 MHz
14	φ1	Phase 1 system clock
15	φ0	Phase 0 system clock
16	Q3	Intermediate timing and strobe signal
17	PCAS'	RAM Column-address strobe
18	Q8	N. C. (This pin is not used.)
19	φ0	
20	PRAS'	RAM Row-address strobe
	+5V	Power

Figure 7-4 The PAL Pinouts

14M	1	20	+5V
7M	2	19	PRAS'
3.58M	3	18	(n.c.)
H0	4	17	PCAS'
VID7	5	16	Q8
SEGB	6	15	φ0
GR	7	14	φ1
RAMEN	8	13	VID7M
80VID'	9	12	LDPS
GND	10	11	ENTMG

## Memory Addressing

The 6502 microprocessor can address 65,536 locations. The Apple IIe uses this entire address space, and then some: some areas in memory are used for more than one function. The following sections describe the memory devices used in the Apple IIe and the way they are addressed. Input and output also use portions of the memory address space; refer to the section "Peripheral-card Memory Spaces" in Chapter 6 for information.

### ROM Addressing

In the Apple IIe, the following programs are permanently stored in two type 2364 8K by 8-bit ROMs (read-only memory):

- Applesoft editor and interpreter
- Monitor
- 80-column display firmware
- Self-test routines

These two ROMs are enabled by two signals called ROMEN1 and ROMEN2. The ROM enabled by ROMEN1, sometimes called the Diagnostics ROM, occupies the memory address space from \$C100 to \$DFFF. The address space from \$C300 to \$C3FF and from \$C800 to \$CFFF contains the 80-column display firmware. Those address spaces are normally assigned to ROM on a peripheral card in slot 3; for a discussion of the way the 80-column firmware overrides the peripheral card, see the section "Other Uses of I/O Memory Space" in Chapter 6.

Two other portions of the Diagnostics ROM, addressed from \$C100 to \$C2FF and from \$C400 to \$C7FF, contain the built-in self-test routines. These address spaces are normally assigned to the peripheral cards; when the self-test programs are running, the peripheral cards are disabled.

The remainder of the Diagnostics ROM, addressed from \$D000 to \$DFFF, contains part of the Applesoft BASIC interpreter.

The ROM enabled by ROMEN2, sometimes called the Monitor ROM, occupies the memory address space from \$E000 to \$FFFF. This ROM contains the rest of the Applesoft interpreter, in the address space from \$E000 to \$EFFF, and the Monitor subroutines, from \$F000 to \$FFFF.

Figure 7-5 The 2364 ROM Pinouts

+5V	1	28	+5V
A12	2	27	+5V
A7	3	26	+5V
A6	4	25	A8
A5	5	24	A9
A4	6	23	A11
A3	7	22	ROMEN*
A2	8	21	A10
A1	9	20	CE
A0	10	19	MD7
M00	11	18	MD6
M01	12	17	MD5
M02	13	16	MD4
GND	14	15	MD3

Figure 7-6 The 2316 ROM Pinouts

A7	1	24	+5V
A6	2	23	A8
A5	3	22	A9
A4	4	21	+5V
A3	5	20	KBD*
A2	6	19	GND*
A1	7	18	ENKBD
A0	8	17	(n.c.)
M00	9	16	MD6
M01	10	15	MD5
M02	11	14	MD4
GND	12	13	MD3

Figure 7-7 The 2333 ROM Pinouts

VID4	1	24	+5V
VID3	2	23	VID5
VID2	3	22	RA9
VID1	4	21	GR
VID0	5	20	WNDW*
VC	6	19	RA10
SEGB	7	18	ENVID*
SEGA	8	17	D7
D0	9	16	D6
D1	10	15	D5
D2	11	14	D4
GND	12	13	D3

The other ROMs in the Apple IIe are a type 2316 ROM used for the keyboard character decoder and a type 2333 ROM used for character sets for the video display. This 2333 ROM is rather large because it includes a section of straight-through bit-mapping for the graphics modes. This way, graphics display video can pass through the same circuits as text without additional switching circuitry.

### RAM Addressing

The RAM (programmable) memory in the Apple IIe is used both for program and data storage and for the video display. The areas in RAM that are used for the display are accessed both by the 6502 microprocessor and by the video display circuits. In some computers, this dual access results in addressing conflicts (cycle stealing) that can cause temporary dropouts in the video display. This problem does not occur in the Apple IIe, thanks to the way the microprocessor and the video circuits share the memory.

The memory circuits in the Apple IIe take advantage of the two-phase system clock described in the section "System Timing" to interleave the microprocessor memory accesses and the display memory accesses so that they never interfere with each other. The microprocessor reads or writes to RAM only during  $\phi_0$ , and the display circuits read data only during  $\phi_1$ .

### Dynamic-RAM Refreshment

The image on a video display is not permanent; it fades rapidly and must be refreshed periodically. To refresh the video display, the Apple IIe reads the data in the active display page and sends it to the display. To prevent visible flicker in the display, and to conform to standard practice for broadcast video, the Apple IIe refreshes the display sixty times per second.

The dynamic RAM devices used in the Apple IIe also need a kind of refresh, because the data is stored in the form of electric charges which diminish with time and must be replenished every so often. The Apple IIe is designed so that refreshing the display also refreshes the dynamic RAMs. The next few paragraphs explain how this is done.

The job of refreshing the dynamic RAM devices is minimized by the structure of the devices themselves. The individual data cells in each RAM device are arranged in a rectangular array of rows

and columns. When the device is addressed, the part of the address that specifies a row is presented first, followed by the address of the column. Splitting information into parts that follow each other in time is called *multiplexing*. Since only half of the address is needed at one time, multiplexing the address reduces the number of pins needed for connecting the RAMs.

Different manufacturers' 64K RAMs have cell arrays of either 128 rows by 512 columns or 256 rows by 256 columns. Only the row portion of the address is used in refreshing the RAMs.

Now consider how the display is refreshed. As described later in this chapter in the section "The Video Counters", the display circuitry generates a sequence of 8,192 memory addresses in high-resolution mode; in text and low-resolution modes, this sequence is the 1,024 display-page addresses repeated eight times. The display address cycles through this sequence 60 times a second, or once every 17 milliseconds. The way the low-order address lines are assigned to the RAMs, the row address cycles through all 256 possible values once every half-millisecond (see Table 7-9). This more than satisfies the refresh requirements of the dynamic RAMs.

Table 7-9 RAM Address Multiplexing

Mux'd Address	Row Address	Column Address
RA0	A0	A9
RA1	A1	A6
RA2	A2	A10
RA3	A3	A11
RA4	A4	A12
RA5	A5	A13
RA6	A7	A14
RA7	A8	A15

Figure 7-8 The 64K RAM Pinouts

+5V	1	16	GND
MDx	2	15	CAS'
R/W'	3	14	MDx
RAS'	4	13	RA1
RA7	5	12	RA4
RA5	6	11	RA3
RA6	7	10	RA2
+5V	8	9	RA0

### ***Dynamic-RAM Timing***

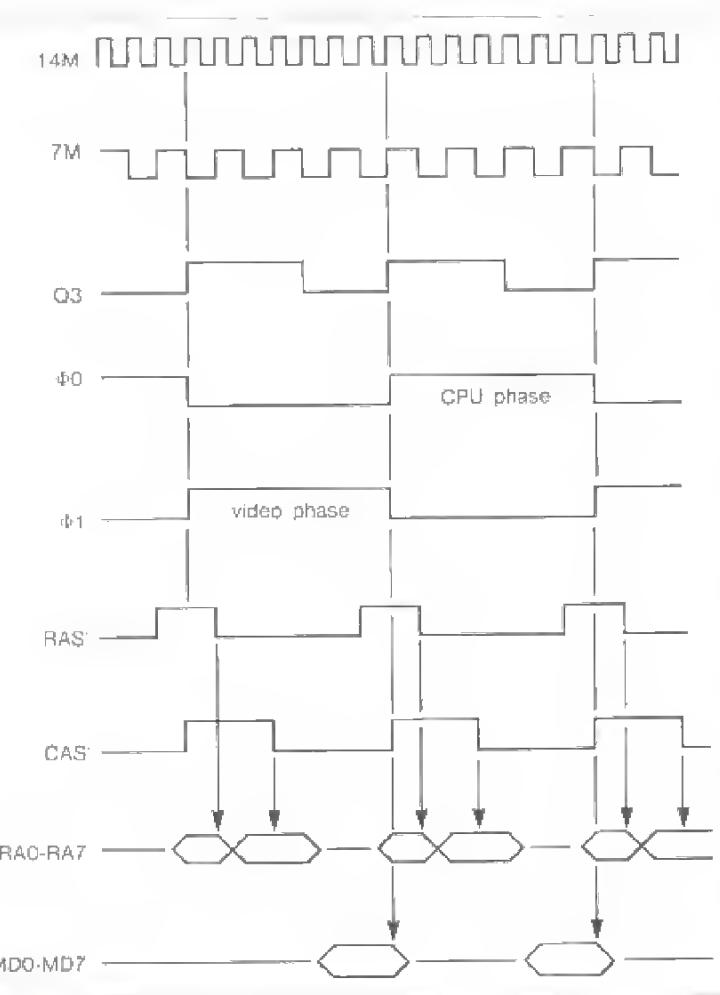
The Apple IIe's microprocessor clock runs at a moderate speed, about 1.023 MHz, but the interleaving of CPU and display cycles means that the RAM is being accessed at a 2 MHz rate, or a cycle time of just under 500 nanoseconds. Data for the CPU is strobed by the falling edge of  $\phi_0$ , and display data is strobed by the falling edge of  $\phi_1$ , as shown in Figure 7-9.

The RAM timing looks complicated because the RAM address is multiplexed, as described in the previous section. The MMU takes care of multiplexing the address for the CPU cycle, and the IOU performs the same function for the display cycle. The multiplexed address is sent to the RAM ICs over the lines labelled RA0-RA7. Along with the other timing signals, the PAL generates two signals that control the RAM addressing: Row-address Strobe (RAS) and Column-address Strobe (CAS).

**Table 7-10** Dynamic RAM Timing Signals

Signal Name	Description
$\phi_0$	Clock phase 0 (CPU phase)
$\phi_1$	Clock phase 1 (display phase)
RAS	Row-address strobe
CAS	Column-address strobe
Q3	Alternative column-address strobe
RA0-RA7	Multiplexed address bus
MDO-MD7	Internal data bus

Figure 7-9 RAM Timing Signals



## The Video Display

The Apple IIe produces a video signal that creates a display on a standard video monitor or, if you add an RF modulator, on a black-and-white or color television set. The video signal is a composite made up of the data that is being displayed plus the horizontal and vertical synchronization signals that the video monitor uses to arrange the lines of display data on the screen.

Apple IIe's manufactured for sale in the U.S. generate a video signal that is compatible with the standards set by the NTSC (National Television Standards Committee). Apple IIe's manufactured for sale in European countries generate video that is compatible with the standard used there, which is called PAL (for Phase Alternating Lines). This manual describes only the NTSC version of the video circuits.

The display portion of the video signal is a time-varying voltage generated from a stream of data bits, where a one corresponds to a voltage that generates a bright dot, and a zero to a dark dot. The display bit stream is generated in bursts that correspond to the horizontal lines of dots on the video screen. The signal named **WNDW'** is low during these bursts.

During the time intervals between bursts of data, nothing is displayed on the screen. During these intervals, called the *blanking intervals*, the display is blank and the **WNDW'** signal is high. The synchronization signals, called sync for short, are produced by making the signal named **SYNC'** low during portions of the blanking intervals. The sync pulses are at a voltage equivalent to blacker-than-black video and don't show on the screen.

---

### **The Video Counters**

The address and timing signals that control the generation of the video display are all derived from a chain of counters inside the IOU. Only a few of these counter signals are accessible from outside the IOU, but they are all important in understanding the operation of the display generation process, particularly the display memory addressing described in the next section.

The horizontal counter is made up of seven stages: **H0**, **H1**, **H2**, **H3**, **H4**, **H5**, and **HPE'**. The input to the horizontal counter is the 1 MHz signal that controls the reading of data being displayed. The complete cycle of the horizontal counter consists of 65 states. The six bits **H0** through **H5** count normally from 0 to 63, then start over at 0. Whenever this happens, **HPE'** forces another count with **H0** through **H5** held at zero, thus extending the total count to 65.

The IOU uses the forty horizontal count values from 25 through 64 in generating the low-order part of the display data address, as described below in the section "Display Address Mapping". The IOU uses the count values from 0 to 24 to generate the horizontal blanking, the horizontal sync pulse, and the color-burst gate.

When the horizontal count gets to 65, it signals the end of a line by triggering the vertical counter. The vertical counter has nine stages: **VA**, **VB**, **VC**, **V0**, **V1**, **V2**, **V3**, **V4**, and **V5**. When the vertical count reaches 262, the IOU resets it and starts counting again from zero. Only the first 192 scanning lines are actually displayed; the IOU uses the vertical counts from 192 to 261 to

generate the vertical blanking and sync pulse. Nothing is displayed during the vertical blanking interval. (The vertical line count is 262 rather than the standard 262.5 because, unlike normal television, the Apple IIe's video display is not interlaced.)

Animation displays sometimes have an erratic flicker caused by changing the display data at the same time it is being displayed. You can avoid this on the Apple IIe by reading the vertical-blanking signal (VBL) at location \$C019 and only changing display data while VBL is low (data value less than 128).

### ***Display Memory Addressing***

As described in Chapter 2 in the section "Addressing Display Pages Directly", data bytes are not stored in memory in the same sequence in which they appear on the display. You can get an idea of the way the display data is stored by using the Monitor to set the display to graphics mode, then storing data starting at the beginning of the display page at hexadecimal \$400 and watching the effect on the display. If you do this, you should use the graphics display instead of text to avoid confusion: the text display is also used for Monitor input and output.

If you want your program to display data by storing it directly into the display memory, you must first transform the display coordinates into the appropriate memory addresses, as shown in Chapter 2. The descriptions that follow will help you understand how this address transformation is done and why it is necessary. They will not (alas!) eliminate that necessity.

The address transformation that folds three rows of forty display bytes into 128 contiguous memory locations is the same for all display modes, so it is described first. The differences among the different display modes are described in the section "Video Display Modes", below.

### ***Display Address Mapping***

Consider the simplest display on the Apple IIe, the 40-column text mode. To address forty columns requires six bits, and to address twenty-four rows requires another five bits, for a total of eleven address bits. Addressing the display this way would involve 2048 (two to the eleventh power) bytes of memory to display a mere 960 characters. The 80-column text mode would require 4096 bytes to display 1920 characters. The leftover

chunks of memory that were not displayed could be used for storing other data, but not easily, because they would not be contiguous.

Instead of using the horizontal and vertical counts to address memory directly, the circuitry inside the IOU transforms them into the new address signals described below. The transformed display address must meet the following criteria:

- Map the 960 bytes of 40-column text into only 1024 bytes.
- Scan the low-order address to refresh the dynamic RAMs.
- Continue to refresh the RAMs during video blanking.

The requirements for RAM refreshing are discussed above, in the section “Dynamic-RAM Refreshment”.

The transformation involves only horizontal counts  $H_3$ ,  $H_4$ , and  $H_5$ , and vertical counts  $V_3$  and  $V_4$ . Vertical count bits  $V_A$ ,  $V_B$ , and  $V_C$  address the lines making up the characters, and are not involved in the address transformation. The remaining low-order count bits,  $H_0$ ,  $H_1$ ,  $H_2$ ,  $V_0$ ,  $V_1$ , and  $V_2$  are used directly, and are not involved in the transformation.

The IOU performs an addition that reduces the five significant count bits to four new signals called  $S_0$ ,  $S_1$ ,  $S_2$ , and  $S_3$ , where  $S$  stands for sum. Figure 7-10 is a diagram showing the addition in binary form, with  $V_3$  appearing as the carry in and  $H_5$  appearing as its complement  $H_5'$ . A constant value of one appears as the low-order bit of the addend. The carry bit generated with the sum is not used.

**Figure 7-10** Display Address Transformation

			$V_3$	Carry in
$H_5'$	$V_3$	$H_4$	$H_3$	Augend
$V_4$	$H_5$	$V_4$	1	Addend
$S_3$	$S_2$	$S_1$	$S_0$	Sum

If this transformation seems terribly obscure, try it with actual values. For example, for the upper-left corner of the display, the vertical count is zero and the horizontal count is 24:  $H_0$ ,  $H_1$ ,  $H_2$ , and  $H_5$  are zeros and  $H_3$  and  $H_4$  are ones. The value of the sum is zero, so the memory location for the first character on the display is the first location in the display page, as you might expect.

Horizontal bits  $H_0$ ,  $H_1$ , and  $H_2$  and sum bits  $S_0$ ,  $S_1$ , and  $S_2$  make up the transformed horizontal address ( $A_0$  through  $A_6$  in Table 7-11). As the horizontal count increases from 24 to 63, the value of the sum ( $S_3 S_2 S_1 S_0$ ) increases from zero to four and the transformed address goes from 0 to 39, relative to the beginning of the display page.

The low-order three bits of the vertical row counter are  $V_0$ ,  $V_1$ , and  $V_2$ . These bits control address bits  $A_7$ ,  $A_8$ , and  $A_9$ , as shown in Table 7-11, so that rows 0 through 7 start on 128-byte boundaries. When the vertical row counter reaches 8,  $V_0$ ,  $V_1$ , and  $V_2$  are zero again, and  $V_3$  changes to one. If you do the addition in Figure 7-10 with  $H$  equal to 24 (the horizontal count for the first column displayed) and  $V$  equal to 8, the sum is 5 and the horizontal address is 40: the first character in row 8 is stored in the memory location 40 bytes from the beginning of the display page.

**Figure 7-11** 40-column Text Display Memory. Memory locations marked with an asterisk (\*) are reserved for use by peripheral I/O firmware: refer to the section "Peripheral-card RAM Space", in Chapter 6.

128 bytes			
40 bytes	40 bytes	40 bytes	8 bytes
\$400	row 0	row 8	row 16
\$480	row 1	row 9	row 17
\$500	row 2	row 10	row 18
\$580	row 3	row 11	row 19
\$600	row 4	row 12	row 20
\$680	row 5	row 13	row 21
\$700	row 6	row 14	row 22
\$780	row 7	row 15	row 23

Figure 7-11 shows how groups of three forty-character rows are stored in blocks of 120 contiguous bytes starting on 128-byte address boundaries. This diagram is another way of describing the display mapping shown in Figure 2-5. Notice that the three rows in each block of 120 bytes are not adjacent on the display.

**Table 7-11** Display Memory Addressing

\*For these address bits, see text and Table 7-12.

Memory Address Bit	Display Address Bit
A0	H0
A1	H1
A2	H2
A3	S0
A4	S1
A5	S2
A6	S3
A7	V0
A8	V1
A9	V2
A10	*
A11	*
A12	*
A13	*
A14	*
A15	GND

Table 7-11 shows how the signals from the video counters are assigned to the address lines. H0, H1, and H2 are horizontal-count bits, and V0, V1, and V2 are vertical-count bits. S0, S1, S2 and S3 are the folded address bits described above. Address bits marked with asterisks (\*) are different for different modes: see Table 7-12 and the next three sections.

Table 7-12 Memory Address Bits for Display Modes

Address Bit	Display Mode:	
	Text and Lo-Res	Hi-Res
A10	80VID + PG2'	VA
A11	80VID' + PG2	VB
A12	0	VC
A13	0	80VID + PG2'
A14	0	80VID' + PG2

### Video Display Modes

The different display modes all use the address-mapping scheme described in the previous section, but they use different-sized memory areas in different locations. The next three sections describe the addressing schemes and the methods of generating the actual video signals for the different display modes.

#### Text Displays

The text and low-resolution graphics pages begin at memory locations \$400 and \$800. Table 7-12 shows how the display-mode signals control the address bits to produce these addresses. Address bits A10 and A11 are controlled by PG2 and 80VID, which are set by the display-page and 80-column-video soft switches. Address bits A12, A13, and A14 are set to zero. Notice that 80VID active inhibits PG2: there is only one display page in 80-column mode.

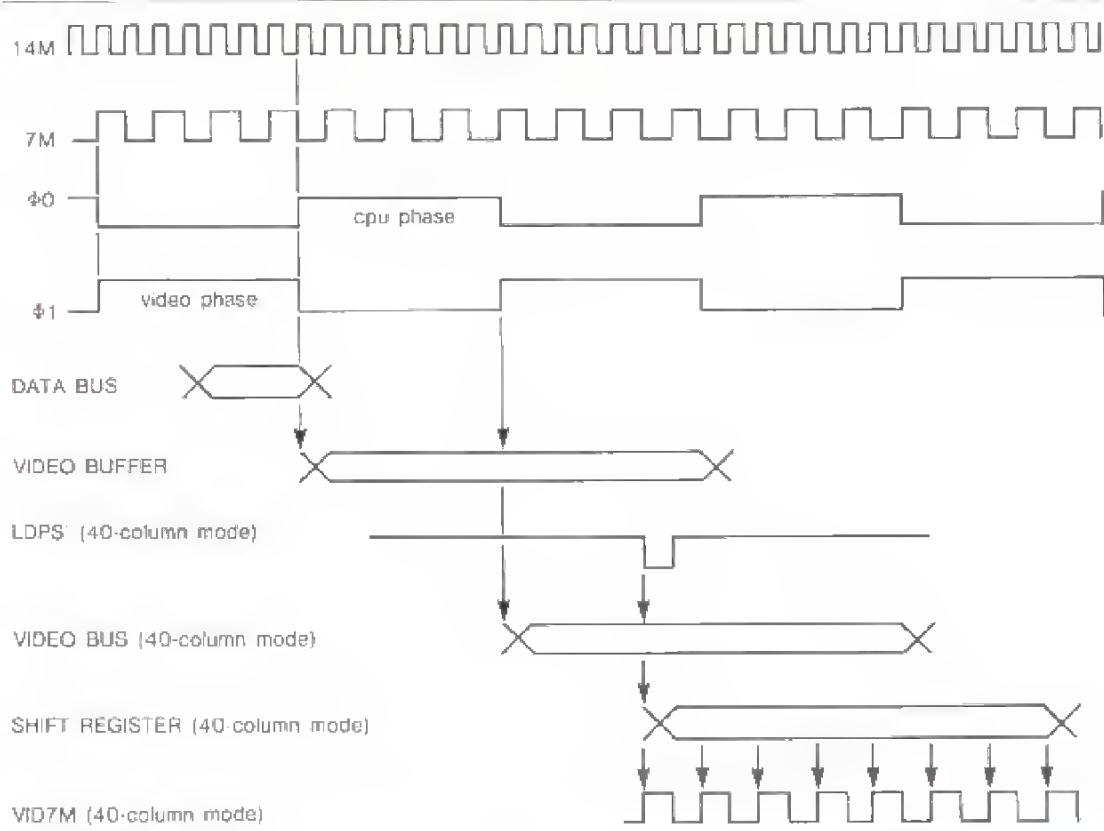
The low-order six bits of each data byte reach the character generator directly, via the video data bus VID0–VID5. The two high-order bits are modified by the IOU to select between the primary and alternate character sets and are sent to the character generator on lines RA9 and RA10.

The data for each row of characters are read eight times, once for each of the eight lines of dots making up the row of characters. The data bits are sent to the character generator along with VA, VB, and VC, the low-order bits from the vertical counter. For each character being displayed, the character generator puts out one of eight stored bit patterns selected by the three-bit number made up of VA, VB, and VC.

The bit patterns from the character generator are loaded into the 74166 parallel-to-serial shift register and output as a serial bit stream that goes to the video output circuit. The shift register is controlled by signals named LDPS' (for load parallel-to-serial shifter) and VID7M (for video 7 MHz). In 40-column mode, LDPS' strobes the output of the character generator into the shift register once each microsecond, and VID7M shifts the bits out at 7 MHz.

The addressing for the 80-column display is exactly the same as for the 40-column display: the 40 columns of display memory on the 80-column card are addressed in parallel with the 40 columns in main memory. The data from these two memories reach the video data bus (lines VID0-VID7) via separate 74LS374 three-state buffers. These buffers are loaded simultaneously, but their outputs are sent to the character generator alternately by  $\phi_0$  and  $\phi_1$ . In 80-column mode, LDPS' loads data from the character generator into the shift register twice during each microsecond, once during  $\phi_0$  and once during  $\phi_1$ , and VID7M runs at 14 MHz to shift the data bits out twice as fast.

Figure 7-12 Video Timing Signals



### Low-Resolution Display

In the graphics modes, VA and VB are not used by the character generator, so the IOU uses lines SEGA and SEGB to transmit H0 and HIRES', as shown in Table 7-13.

Table 7-13 Character-generator Control Signals

Display mode	SEGA	SEGB	SEGC
Text	VA	VB	VC
Graphics	H0	HIRES'	VC

The low-resolution graphics display uses VC to divide the eight display lines corresponding to a row of characters into two groups of four lines each. Each row of data bytes is addressed eight times, the same as in text mode, but each byte is interpreted as two nybbles. Each nybble selects one of sixteen colors. During the upper four of the eight display lines, VC is low and the low-order nybble determines the color. During the lower four display lines, VC is high and the high-order nybble determines the color.

The bit patterns that produce the low-resolution colors are read from the character-generator ROM in the same way the bit patterns for characters are produced in text mode. The 74166 parallel-to-serial shift register converts the bit patterns to a serial bit stream for the video circuits.

The video signal generated by the Apple IIe includes a short burst of 3.58 MHz signal that is used by an NTSC color monitor or color TV set to generate a reference 3.58 MHz color signal. The Apple IIe's video signal produces color by interacting with this 3.58 MHz signal inside the monitor or TV set. Different bit patterns produce different colors by changing the duty cycles and delays of the bit stream relative to the 3.58 MHz color signal. To produce the small delays required for so many different colors, the shift register runs at 14 MHz and shifts out 14 bits during each cycle of the 1-MHz data clock. To generate a stream of fourteen bits from each eight-bit pattern read from the ROM, the output of the shift register is connected back to the register's serial input to repeat the same eight bits; the last two bits are ignored the second time around.

Each bit pattern is output for the same amount of time as a character: 1.02 microseconds. Because that is exactly enough time for three and a half cycles of the 3.58 MHz color signal, the phase relationship between the bit patterns and the signal changes by a half cycle for each successive pattern. To compensate for this, the character generator puts out one of two different bit patterns for each nibble, depending on the state of H0, the low-order bit of the horizontal counter.

#### *High-Resolution Display*

The high-resolution graphics pages begin at memory locations \$2000 and \$4000 (decimal 8192 and 16384). These page addresses are selected by address bits A13 and A14. In high-resolution mode, these address bits are controlled by PG2 and 80VID, the signals controlled by the display-page (PAGE2) and 80-column-video (80COL) soft switches. As in text mode, 80VID inhibits addressing of the second page because there is only one page of 80-column text available for mixed mode.

In high-resolution graphics mode, the display data are still stored in blocks like the one shown in Figure 7-11, but there are eight of these blocks. As Table 7-11 and Table 7-12 show, vertical counts VA, VB, and VC are used for address bits A10, A11, and A12, which address eight blocks of 1024 bytes each. Remember that in the display VA, VB, and VC count adjacent horizontal lines in groups of eight. This addressing scheme maps each of those lines into a different 1024-byte block. It might help to think of it as a kind of eight-way multiplexer: it's as if eight text displays were combined to produce a single high-resolution display, with each text display providing one line of dots in turn, instead of a row of characters.

The high-resolution bit patterns are produced by the character-generator ROM. In this mode, the bit patterns simply reproduce the eight bits of display data. The low-order six bits of data reach the ROM via the video data bus VID0-VID5. The IOU sends the other two data bits to the ROM via RA9 and RA10.

The high-resolution colors described in Chapter 2 are produced by the interaction between the video signal the bit patterns generate and the 3.58 MHz color signal generated inside the monitor or TV set. The high-resolution bit patterns are always shifted out at 7 MHz, so each dot corresponds to a half-cycle of the 3.58 MHz color signal. Any part of the video signal that

produces a single white dot between two black dots, or vice-versa, is effectively a short burst of 3.58 MHz and is therefore displayed as color. In other words, a bit pattern consisting of alternating ones and zeros gets displayed as a line of color. The high-resolution graphics subroutines produce the appropriate bit patterns by masking the data bits with alternating ones and zeros.

To produce different colors, the bit patterns must have different phase relationships to the 3.58 MHz color signal. If alternating ones and zeros produce a certain color, say green, then reversing the pattern to zeros and ones will produce the complementary color, purple. As in the low-resolution mode, each bit pattern corresponds to three and a half cycles of the color signal, so the phase relationship between the data bits and the color signal changes by a half cycle for each successive byte of data. Here, however, the bit patterns produced by the hardware are the same for adjacent bytes; the color compensation is performed by the high-resolution software, which uses different color masks for data being displayed in even and odd columns.

To produce other colors, bit patterns must have other timing relationships to the 3.58 MHz color signal. In high-resolution mode, the Apple IIe produces two more colors by delaying the output of the shift register by half a dot (70 ns), depending on the high-order bit of the data byte being displayed. (The high-order bit doesn't actually get displayed as a dot, because at 7 MHz there is only time to shift out seven of the eight bits.)

As each byte of data is sent from the character generator to the shift register, high-order data bit D7 is also sent to the PAL. If D7 is off, the PAL transmits shift-register timing signals LDPS' and VID7M normally. If D7 is on, the PAL delays LDPS' and VID7M by 70 nanoseconds, the time corresponding to half a dot. The bit pattern that formerly produced green now produces orange; the pattern for purple now produces blue.

A note about timing: For 80-column text, the shift register is clocked at twice normal speed. When 80-column text is used with graphics in mixed mode, the PAL controls shift-register timing signals LDPS' and VID7M so that the graphics portion of the display works correctly even when the text window is in 80-column mode.

### Video Output Signals

The stream of video data generated by the display circuits described above goes to a linear summing circuit built around transistor Q1 where it is mixed with the sync signals and the color burst. Resistors R3, R5, R7, R10, R13, and R15 adjust the signals to the proper amplitudes, and a tank circuit (L3 and C32) resonant at 3.58 MHz conditions the color burst.

The resulting video signal is an NTSC-compatible composite-video signal that can be displayed on a standard video monitor. The signal is similar to the EIA (Electronic Industries Association) standard positive composite video (see Table 7-14). This signal is available in two places in the Apple IIe:

- At the phono jack on the back of the Apple IIe. The sleeve of this jack is connected to ground and the tip is connected to the video output through a resistor network that attenuates it to about 1 volt and matches its impedance to 75 ohms.
- At the internal video connector on the Apple IIe circuit board near the RCA jack, J13 in Figure 7-14c. It is made up of four Molex-type pins, 0.25 inches tall, on 0.10 inch centers. This connector carries the video signal, ground, and two power supplies, as shown in Table 7-14.

Table 7-14 Internal Video Connector Signals

Pin Number	Name	Description
1	GROUND	System common ground
2	VIDEO	NTSC-compatible positive composite video. White level is about 2.0 volts, black level is about 0.75 volts, and sync level is 0.0 volts. This output is not protected against short circuits.
3	-5V	-5 volt power supply
4	+12V	+12 volt power supply

## Built-in I/O Circuits

The use of the Apple IIe's built-in I/O features is described in Chapter 2. This section describes the hardware implementation of all of those features except the video display described in the previous sections. The IOU (Input/Output Unit) generates the output signals for the speaker, the cassette interface, and the annunciators directly. The other I/O features are handled by smaller ICs, as described below.

The addresses of the built-in I/O features are described in Chapter 2 and listed in Table 2-2, Table 2-11, and Table 2-12. All of the built-in I/O features except the displays use memory locations between \$C000 and \$C070 (decimal 49152 and 49264). The I/O address decoding is performed by three ICs: a 74LS138, a 74LS154, and a 74LS251.

The 74LS138 decodes address lines A8, A9, A10, and A11 to select address pages on 256-byte boundaries starting at \$C000 (decimal 49152). When it detects addresses between \$C000 and \$C0FF, it enables the IOU and the 74LS154. The 74LS154 in turn decodes address lines A4, A5, A6, and A7 to select 16-byte address areas between \$C000 and \$C0FF. Addresses between \$C060 and \$C06F enable the 74LS251 that multiplexes the hand control switches and paddles; addresses between \$C070 and \$C07F reset the NE558 quadruple timer that interfaces to the hand controls, as described below in the section "Game I/O Signals".

## The Keyboard

The Apple IIe's keyboard is a matrix of keyswitches connected to an AY-3600-type keyboard decoder via a ribbon cable and a 26-pin connector. The AY-3600 scans the array of keys over and over to detect any keys pressed. The scanning rate is set by the external resistor-capacitor network made up of C70 and R32. The debounce time is also set externally, by C71.

The AY-3600's outputs include five bits of key code plus separate lines for **CONTROL**, **SHIFT**, any-key-down, and keyboard strobe. The any-key-down and keyboard-strobe lines are connected to the IOU, which addresses them as soft switches. The key-code lines, along with **CONTROL** and **SHIFT**, are inputs to a separate 2316 ROM. The ROM translates them to the character codes that are enabled onto the data bus by signals named **KBD'** and **ENKBD'**. The **KBD'** signal is enabled by the MMU whenever a program reads location \$C000, as described in Chapter 2.

Table 7-15 Keyboard Connector Signals

Pin Number	Name	Description
1, 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 23, 25, 12, 22	Y0-Y9	Y-direction key-matrix connections
3	+5	+5 volt supply
5, 7, 9, 15	n. c.	
1	LCNTL'	Line from <b>CONTROL</b> key
13	GND	System common ground
14, 16, 20, 21, 19, 26, 17	X0-X7	X-direction key-matrix connections
24	LSHFT'	Line from <b>SHIFT</b> key

#### Connecting a Keypad

There is a smaller connector wired in parallel with the keyboard connector. You can connect a ten-key numeric pad to the Apple IIe via this connector.

Table 7-16 Keypad Connector Signals

Pin Number	Name	Description
1, 2, 5, 3, 4, 6	Y0-Y5	Y-direction key-matrix connections
7	n. c.	
9, 11, 10, 8	X4-X7	X-direction key-matrix connections

## Cassette I/O

The two miniature phone jacks on the back of the Apple IIe are used to connect an audio cassette recorder for saving programs. The output signal to the cassette recorder comes from a pin on the IOU via resistor network R6 and R9, which attenuates the signal to a level appropriate for the recorder's microphone input. Input from the recorder is amplified and conditioned by a type 741 operational amplifier and sent to one of the inputs of the 74LS251 input multiplexer.

The signal specifications for cassette I/O are:

Input: 1 volt (nominal) from recorder Earphone or Monitor output. Input impedance is 12K ohms.

Output: 25 millivolts to recorder Microphone input. Output impedance is 100 ohms.

## The Speaker

The Apple IIe's built-in loudspeaker is controlled by a single bit of output from the IOU (Input Output Unit). The signal from the IOU is AC coupled to Q5, an MPSA13 Darlington transistor amplifier. The speaker connector is a Molex KK100 connector, J18 in Figure 7-14b, with two square pins 0.25 inches tall and on 0.10-inch centers.

A light-emitting diode is connected in parallel across the speaker pins such that, when the speaker is not connected, the diode glows whenever the speaker signal is on. This diode is used as a diagnostic indicator during assembly and testing of the Apple IIe.

Table 7-17 Speaker Connector Signals

Pin Number	Name	Description
1	SPKR	Speaker signal. This line will deliver about 0.5 watts into an 8-ohm speaker.
2	+5	+5V power supply. Note that the speaker is not connected to system ground.

## Game I/O Signals

Several I/O signals that are individually controlled via soft switches are collectively referred to as the game signals. Even though they are normally used for hand controls, these signals can be used for other simple I/O applications. There are five output signals: the four annunciations, numbered A0 through A3, and one strobe output. There are three one-bit inputs, called switches and numbered SW0 through SW2, and four analog inputs, called paddles and numbered PDL0 through PDL3.

The annunciation outputs are driven directly by the IOU (Input Output Unit). These outputs can drive one TTL (transistor-transistor logic) load each; for heavier loads, you must use a transistor or a TTL buffer on these outputs. These signals are only available on the 16-pin internal connector (see Table 7-18).

The strobe output is a pulse transmitted any time a program reads or writes to location \$C040. The strobe pin is connected to one output of the 74LS154 address decoder. This TTL signal is normally high; it goes low during  $\phi_0$  of the instruction cycle that addresses location \$C040. This signal is only available on the 16-pin internal connector (see Table 7-18).

The game inputs are multiplexed along with the cassette input signal by a 74LS251 eight-input multiplexer enabled by the C06X' signal from the 74LS154 I/O address decoder. Depending on the low-order address, the appropriate game input is connected to bit 7 of the data bus.

The switch inputs are standard low-power Shottky TTL inputs. To use them, connect each one to 220-ohm pull-up resistors connected to the +5-volt supply and through single-pole, momentary-contact pushbutton switches to ground.

The hand-control inputs are connected to the timing inputs of an NE558 quadruple 555-type analog timer. Addressing \$C07X sends a signal from the 74LS154 that resets all four timers and causes their outputs to go to one (high). A variable resistance of up to 150K ohms connected between one of these inputs and the +5V supply controls the charging time of one of four 0.022-microfarad capacitors. When the voltage on the capacitor passes a certain threshold, the output of the NE558 changes back to zero (low).

Programs can determine the setting of a variable resistor by resetting the timers and then counting time until the selected timer input changes from high to low. The resulting count is proportional to the resistance.

The game I/O signals are all available on a 16-pin DIP socket labelled GAME I/O on the main circuit board inside the case. The switches and the paddles are also available on a D-type miniature connector on the back of the Apple IIe; see J8 and J15 in Figure 7-14d.

Table 7-18 Game I/O Connector Signals

Internal-Connector Pin Number	Back-panel-Connector Pin Number	Signal Name	Description
1	2	+5V	+5 power supply. Total current drain from this pin must not exceed 100mA.
2, 3, 4	7, 1, 6	PB0-PB2	Switch inputs. These are standard 74LS inputs.
5	—	STROBE'	Strobe output. This line goes low during $\phi_0$ of a read or write instruction to location \$C040.
6, 10, 7, 11	5, 8, 4, 9	PDL0-PDL3	Hand control inputs. Each of these should be connected to a 150K-ohm variable resistor connected to +5V.
8	3	GND	System ground.
15, 14, 13, 12	—	AN0-AN3	Annunciators. These are standard 74LS TTL outputs and must be buffered to drive other than TTL inputs.
9, 16	—	n. c.	Nothing is connected to these pins.

## Expanding the Apple IIe

The main circuit board of the Apple IIe has eight empty card connectors or slots on it. These slots make it possible to add features to the Apple IIe by plugging in peripheral cards with additional hardware. Chapter 6 describes the standards for programming peripheral cards for the Apple IIe. This section describes the hardware that supports them, including all of the signals available on the expansion slots.

### The Expansion Slots

The seven connectors lined up across the back part of the Apple IIe's main circuit board are the expansion slots, also called peripheral slots or simply slots, numbered from 1 to 7. They are 50-pin PC-card edge connectors with pins on 0.10-inch centers. A PC card plugged into one of these connectors has access to all of the signals necessary to perform input and output and to execute programs in RAM or ROM on the card. These signals are described briefly in Tables 7-19a, 7-19b, and 7-19c. The following paragraphs describe the signals in general and mention a few points that are often overlooked. For further details, refer to the schematic diagram in Figures 7-14a, 7-14b, 7-14c, and 7-14d.

### The Peripheral Address Bus

The 6502's address bus is buffered by two 74LS244 octal three-state buffers. These buffers, along with a buffer in the 6502's R/W' line, are enabled by a signal derived from the DMA' daisy-chain on the expansion slots. Pulling the peripheral line DMA' low disables the address and R/W' buffers so that peripheral DMA circuitry can control the address bus. The DMA address and R/W' signals supplied by a accessory card must be stable all during  $\phi_0$  of the instruction cycle, as shown in Figure 7-13.

Another signal that can be used to disable normal operation of the Apple IIe is INH'. Pulling INH' low disables all of the memory in the Apple IIe except the part in the I/O space from \$C000 to \$CFFF. A peripheral card that uses either INH' or DMA' must observe proper timing; in order to disable RAM and ROM cleanly, the disabling signal must be stable all during  $\phi_0$  of the instruction cycle (refer to the timing diagram in Figure 7-13).

The peripheral devices should use I/O SELECT' and DEVICE SELECT' as enables. Most peripheral ICs require their

enable signals to be present for a certain length of time before data is strobed into or out of the device. Remember that I/O SELECT' and DEVICE SELECT' are only asserted during  $\phi_0$  high.

#### ***The Peripheral Data Bus***

The Apple IIe has two versions of the 6502 data bus: an internal bus, MD0-MD7, connected directly to the 6502; and an external bus, D0-D7, driven by a 74LS245 octal bidirectional bus buffer. The 6502 is fabricated with MOS circuitry, so it can drive capacitive loads of up to about 130 pF. If peripheral cards are installed in all seven slots, the loading on the data bus can be as high as 500 pF, so the 74LS245 drives the data bus for the peripheral cards. The same argument applies if you use MOS devices on peripheral cards: they don't have enough drive for the fully-loaded bus, so you should add buffers.

#### ***Loading and Driving Rules***

Tables 7-19a, 7-19b, and 7-19c show the drive requirements and loading limits for each pin on the expansion slots. The address bus, the data bus, and the R/W' line should be driven by three-state buffers. Remember that there is considerable distributed capacitance on these busses and that you should plan on tolerating the added load of up to six additional peripheral cards. MOS devices such as PIAs and ACIAs cannot switch such heavy capacitive loads. Connecting such devices directly to the bus will lead to possible timing and level errors.

#### ***Interrupt and DMA Daisy Chains***

The interrupt requests (IRQ' and NMI') and the direct-memory access (DMA') signal are available at all seven expansion slots. A peripheral card requests an interrupt or a DMA transfer by pulling the appropriate output line low (active). If two peripheral cards request an interrupt or a DMA transfer at the same time, they will contend for the data and address busses. To prevent this, two pairs of pins on each connector are wired as a priority daisy chain. The daisy-chain pins for interrupts are INT IN and INT OUT, and the pins for DMA are DMA IN and DMA OUT, as shown for J1-J7 in Figure 7-14d.

Each daisy chain works like this: the output from each connector goes to the input of the next higher numbered one. For these signals to be useful for cards in lower numbered connectors, all of the higher numbered connectors must have cards in them, and all of those cards must connect DMA IN to DMA OUT and INT IN to INT OUT. Whenever an accessory card uses pin DMA', it must do so

only if its DMA IN line is active, and it must disable its DMA OUT line while it is using DMA'. The INT IN and INT OUT lines must be used the same way: enable the card's interrupt circuits with INT IN, and disable INT OUT whenever IRQ' or NMI' is being used.

Figure 7-13 Peripheral-signal Timing

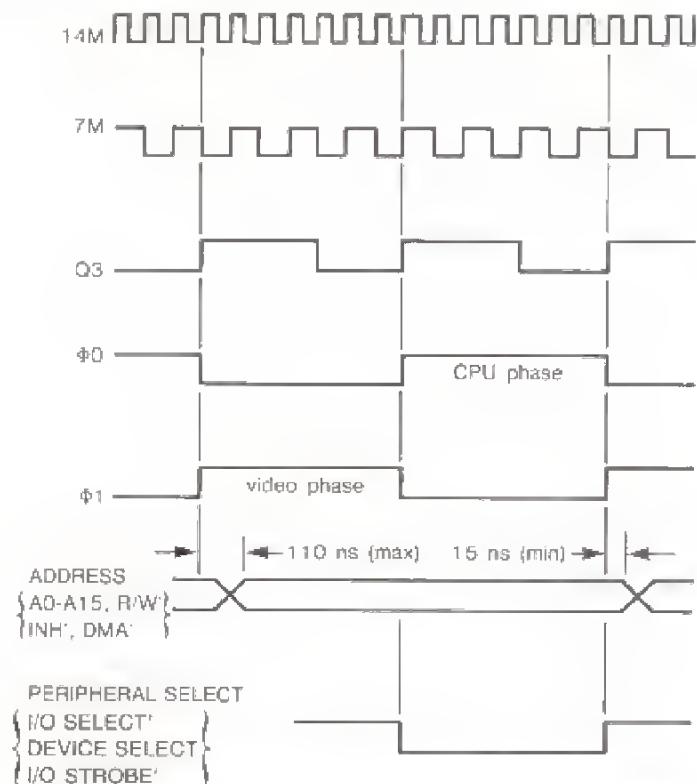


Table 7-19a Expansion Slot Signals

\*Loading limits are for each card.

Pin Number	Name	Description
1	I/O SELECT	Normally high; goes low during $\phi_0$ when the 6502 addresses location \$CnXX, where n is the connector number. This line can drive 10 LS TTL loads.*
2-17	A0-A15	Three-state address bus. The address becomes valid during $\phi_1$ and remains valid during $\phi_0$ . Each address line can drive 5 LS TTL loads.*
18	R/W'	Three-state read/write line. Valid at the same time as the address bus; high during a read cycle, low during a write cycle. It can drive 2 LS TTL loads.*
19	SYNC'	Composite horizontal and vertical sync, on expansion slot 7 ONLY. This line can drive 2 LS TTL loads.*
20	I/O STROBE'	Normally high; goes low during $\phi_0$ when the 6502 addresses a location between \$C800 and \$CFFF. This line can drive 4 LS TTL loads.
21	RDY	Input to the 6502. Pulling this line low during $\phi_1$ halts the 6502 with the address bus holding the address of the location currently being fetched. This line has a 3300 ohm pullup resistor to +5V.
22	DMA'	Input to the address bus buffers. Pulling this line low during $\phi_1$ disconnects the 6502 from the address bus. This line has a 3300 ohm pullup resistor to +5V
23	INT OUT	Interrupt priority daisy-chain output. Usually connected to pin 28 (INT IN). (Note: on slot 7 ONLY, this pin can be connected to the graphics-mode signal GR; see text for details.)
24	DMA OUT	DMA priority daisy-chain output. Usually connected to pin 22 (DMA IN).
25	+5V	+5-volt power supply. A total of 500mA is available for all accessory cards.
26	GND	System common ground.

Table 7-19b Expansion Slot Signals,  
continued

\*Loading limits are for each card.

Pin Number	Name	Description
27	DMA IN	DMA priority daisy-chain input. Usually connected to pin 24 (DMA OUT).
28	INT IN	Interrupt priority daisy-chain input. Usually connected to pin 23 (INT OUT).
29	NMI'	Non-maskable interrupt to 6502. Pulling this line low starts an interrupt cycle with the interrupt-handling routine at location \$03FB. This line has a 3300 ohm pullup resistor to +5V.
30	IRQ'	Interrupt request to 6502. Pulling this line low starts an interrupt cycle only if the interrupt-disable (I) flag in the 6502 is not set. Uses the interrupt-handling routine at location \$03FE. This line has a 3300 ohm pullup resistor to +5V.
31	RES'	Pulling this line low initiates a reset routine, as described in Chapter 4.
32	INH'	Pulling this line low during $\phi_1$ inhibits (disables) the memory on the main circuit board. This line has a 3300 ohm pullup resistor to +5V.
33	-12V	-12 volt power supply. A total of 200mA is available for all accessory cards.
34	-5V	-5 volt power supply. A total of 200mA is available for all accessory cards.
35	3.58M	3.58 MHz color reference signal, on slot 7 only. This line can drive 2 LS TTL loads.*
36	7M	System 7 MHz clock. This line can drive 2 LS TTL loads.*
37	Q3	System 2 MHz asymmetrical clock. This line can drive 2 LS TTL loads.*
38	$\phi_1$	6502 phase 1 clock. This line can drive 2 LS TTL loads.*

**Table 7-19c Expansion Slot Signals, continued**

\*Loading limits are for each card.

Pin Number	Name	Description
39	$\mu$ PSYNC	The 6502 signals an operand fetch by driving this line high during the first read cycle of each instruction.
40	$\phi$ 0	6502 phase 0 clock. This line can drive 2 LS TTL loads.*
41	DEVICE SELECT'	Normally high; goes low during $\phi$ 0 when the 6502 addresses location \$C0nX, where n is the connector number plus 8. This line can drive 10 LS TTL loads.*
42-49	D0-D7	Three-state buffered bi-directional data bus. Data becomes valid during $\phi$ 0 high and remains valid until $\phi$ 0 goes low. Each data line can drive one LS TTL load.*
50	+12V	+12 volt power supply. A total of 250mA is available for all accessory cards.

#### **Video Signals on Slot 7**

The video signals are available only on the auxiliary slot and not on the numbered expansion slots, except for slot 7. The video signals available on expansion slot 7 are SYNC', the composite horizontal and video sync signal, on pin 19, and 3.5BM, the color reference signal, on pin 35. Early production Apple Ile's, identified by a circuit board part number ending in -A, do not have this feature.

The signal that enables the graphics modes, named GR, is not normally available on the numbered expansion slots. You can make it available on pin 23 of slot 7 by completing the circuit at location x7 on the main circuit board. Remember to turn off the power before changing anything inside the Apple Ile. Also remember that changes such as this are at your own risk and may void the warranty.

#### **The Auxiliary Slot**

The large connector at the left side of the Apple Ile's main circuit board is the auxiliary slot. It is a 60-pin PC-card edge connector with pins on 0.10-inch centers. A PC card plugged into this connector has access to all of the signals used in producing the video display. These signals are described briefly in Tables

7-20a, 7-20b, and 7-20c. For further details, refer to the schematic diagram in Figures 7-14a, 7-14b, 7-14c, and 7-14d.

Many of the internal signals that are not available on the expansion slots are on the auxiliary slot. By using both kinds of connectors, manufacturing and repair personnel can gain access to most of the signals needed for diagnosing problems in the Apple IIe.

#### ***80-column Display Signals***

The additional memory needed for producing an 80-column text display is on the 80-column text card, along with the buffers that transfer the data to the video data bus, as described above in the section "Text Displays". The signals that control the 80-column text data include the system clocks  $\phi_0$  and  $\phi_1$ , the multiplexed RAM address RA0-RA7, the RAM address-strobe signals PRAS' and PCAS', and the auxiliary-RAM enable signals, EN80' and R/W80. The EN80' enable signal is controlled by the 805T0RE soft switch described in Chapter 4. Data is sent to the auxiliary memory via the internal data bus MD0-MD7; the data is transferred to the video generator via the video data bus VID0-VID7.

**Table 7-20a** Auxiliary Slot Signals

Pin Number	Name	Description
1	3.58M	3.58 MHz video color reference signal. This line can drive two LS TTL loads.
2	VID7M	Clocks the video dots out of the 74166 parallel-to-serial shift register. This line can drive two LS TTL loads.
3	SYNC'	Video horizontal and vertical sync signal. This line can drive two LS TTL loads.
4	PRAS'	Multiplexed RAM row-address strobe. This line can drive two LS TTL loads.
5	VC	Third low-order vertical-counter bit. This line can drive two LS TTL loads.
6	C07X'	Hand-control reset signal. This line can drive two LS TTL loads.
7	WNDW'	Video non-blank window. This line can drive two LS TTL loads.
8	SEGA	First low-order vertical counter bit. This line can drive two LS TTL loads.
51, 10, 49, 48, 13, 14, 46, 9	RA0 - RA7	Multiplexed RAM-address bus. This line can drive two LS TTL loads.
11, 12	ROMEN1, ROMEN2	Enable signals for the ROMs on the main circuit board.
15	R/W'	Read/write signal from 6502. This line can drive two LS TTL loads.
44, 43, 40, 39, 21, 20, 17, 16	MD0 - MD7	Internal (unbuffered) data bus. This line can drive two LS TTL loads.

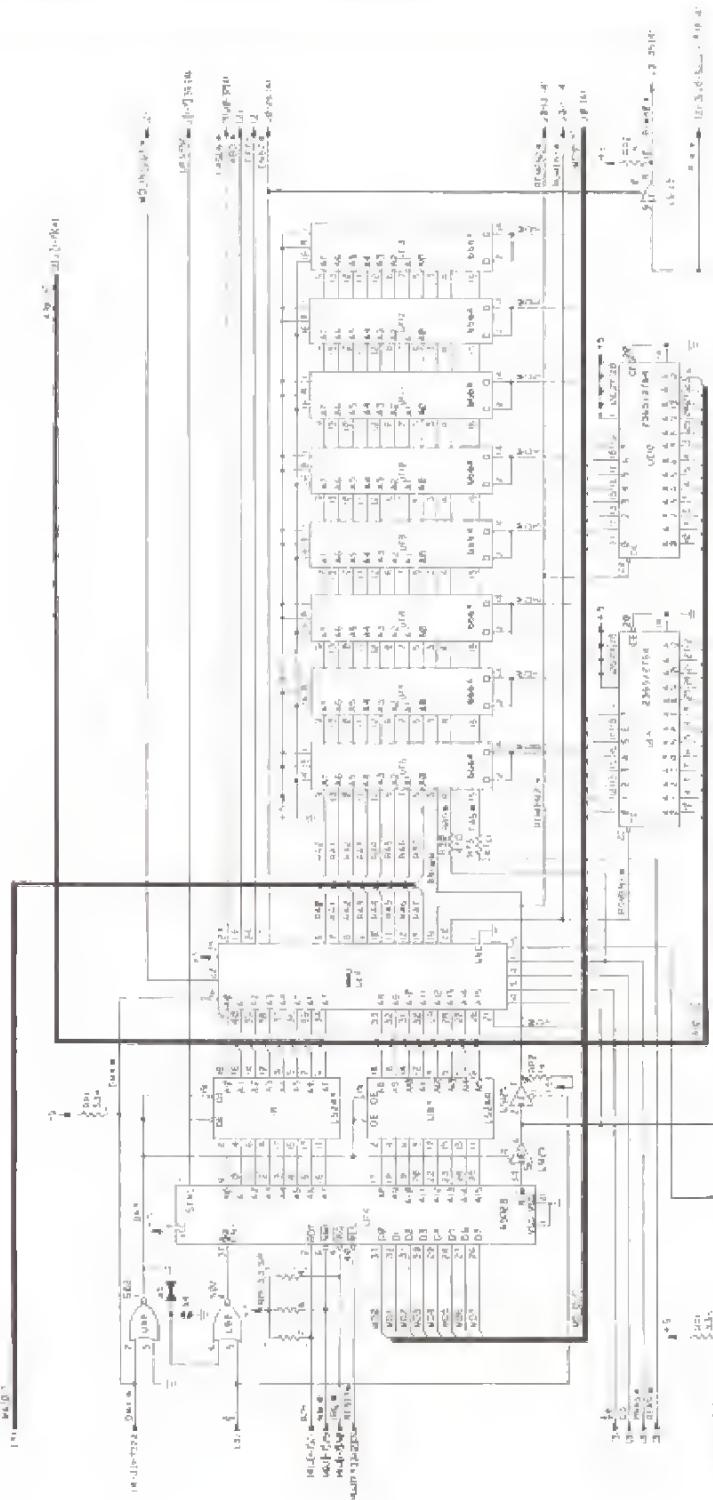
Table 7-20b Auxiliary Slot Signals,  
continued

Pin Number	Name	Description
45, 42, 41, 38, 22, 19, 18, 15	VIDEO-VID7	Video data bus. This three-state bus carries video data to the character generator.
23	$\phi 0$	6502 clock phase 0. This line can drive two LS TTL loads.
24	CLRGAT'	Color-burst gating signal. This line can drive two LS TTL loads.
25	80VID'	Enables 80-column display timing. This line can drive two LS TTL loads.
26	EN80'	Enable for auxiliary RAM. This line can drive two LS TTL loads.
27	ALTV1D'	Alternative video output to the video summing amplifier.
28	SEROUT'	Video serial output from 74166 parallel-to-serial shift register.
29	ENVID'	Normally low; driving this line high disables the character generator such that the video dots from the shift register are all high (white), and alternative video can be sent out via ALTV1D'. This line has a 1000 ohm pulldown resistor to ground.
30	+5	+5 volt power supply.
31	GND	System common ground.
32	14M	14.3 MHz master clock signal. This line can drive two LS TTL loads.
33	PCAS'	Multiplexed column-address strobe. This line can drive two LS TTL loads.
34	LDPS'	Strobe to video parallel-to-serial shift register. This signal goes low to load the contents of the video data bus into the shift register. This line can drive two LS TTL loads.

Table 7-20c Auxiliary Slot Signals, continued

Pin Number	Name	Description
35	R/W80	Read/write signal for RAM on the 80-column text card. This line can drive two LS TTL loads.
36	$\phi_1$	6502 clock phase 1. This line can drive two LS TTL loads.
37	CASEN'	Column-address enable. This signal is disabled (held high) during accesses to memory on the auxiliary card. This line can drive two LS TTL loads.
47	H0	Low-order horizontal byte counter. This line can drive two LS TTL loads.
50	AN3	Output of annunciator number 3. This line can drive two LS TTL loads.
52	R/W'	6502 read/write signal. This line can drive two LS TTL loads.
53	Q3	2 MHz asymmetrical clock. This line can drive two LS TTL loads.
54	SEGB	Second low-order vertical-counter bit. This line can drive two LS TTL loads.
55	ENFIRM	Normally high; pulling this line low disables ROM1 and ROM2 on the main circuit board. This line has a 3300-ohm pullup resistor to +5V.
56, 57	RA9', RA10'	Character-generator control signals from the IOU. This line can drive two LS TTL loads.
58	GR	Graphics-mode enable signal. This line can drive two LS TTL loads.
59	7M	7 MHz timing signal. This line can drive two LS TTL loads.
60	ENTMG'	Normally low; pulling this line high disables the master timing from the PAL. This line has a 1000 ohm pulldown resistor to ground.

**Figure 7-14a** Schematic Diagram  
part 1



**Figure 7-14b** Schematic Diagram, part 2

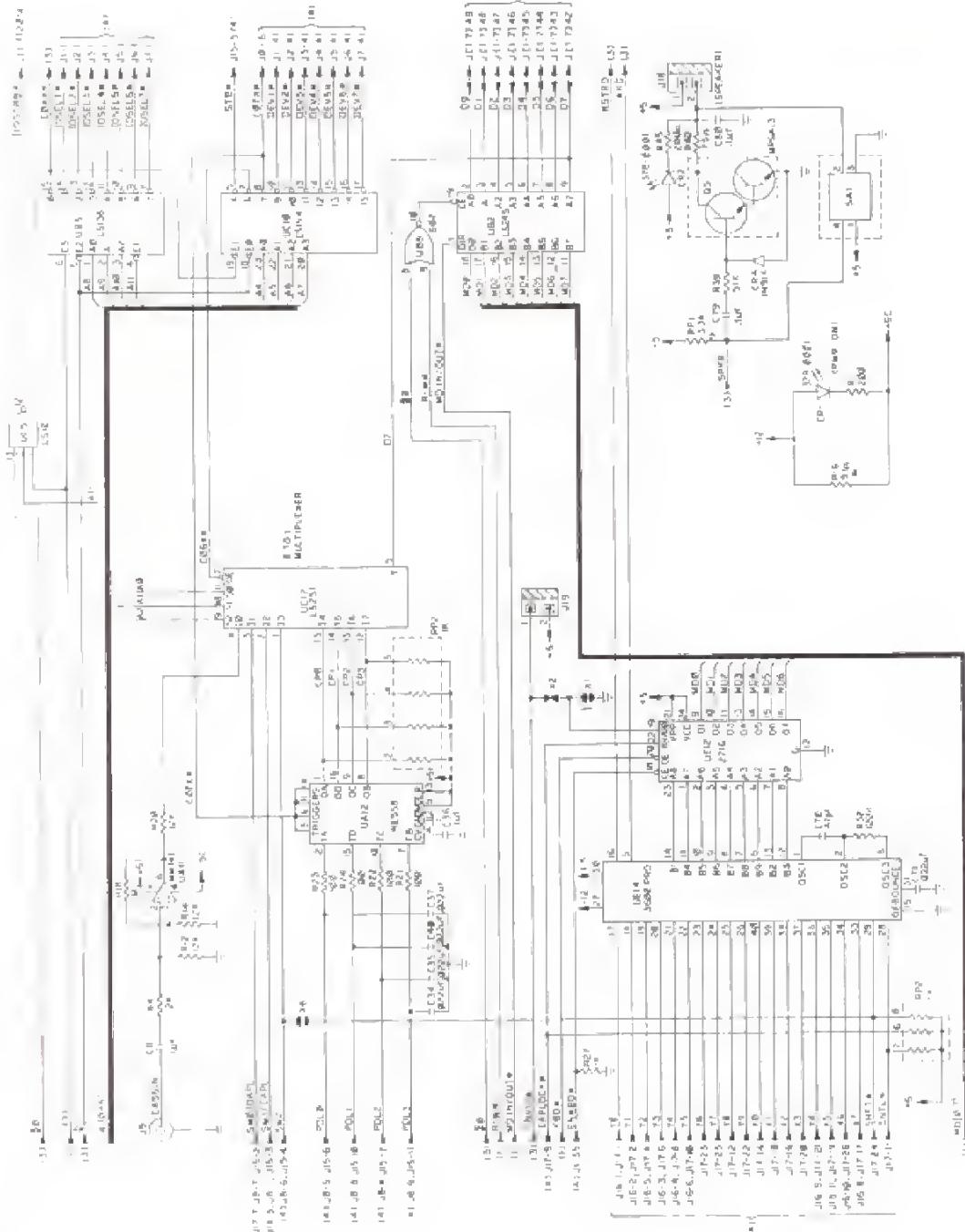
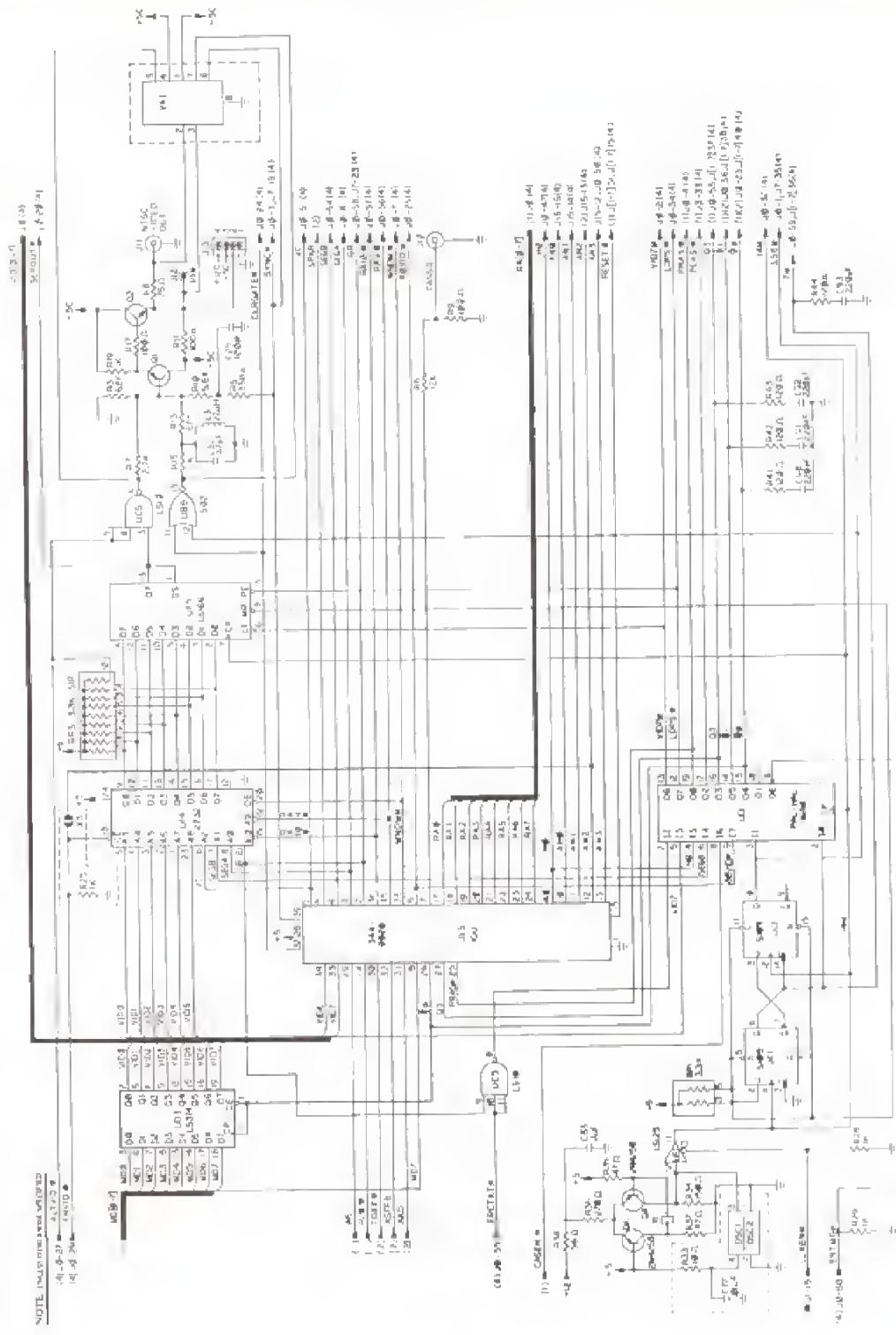
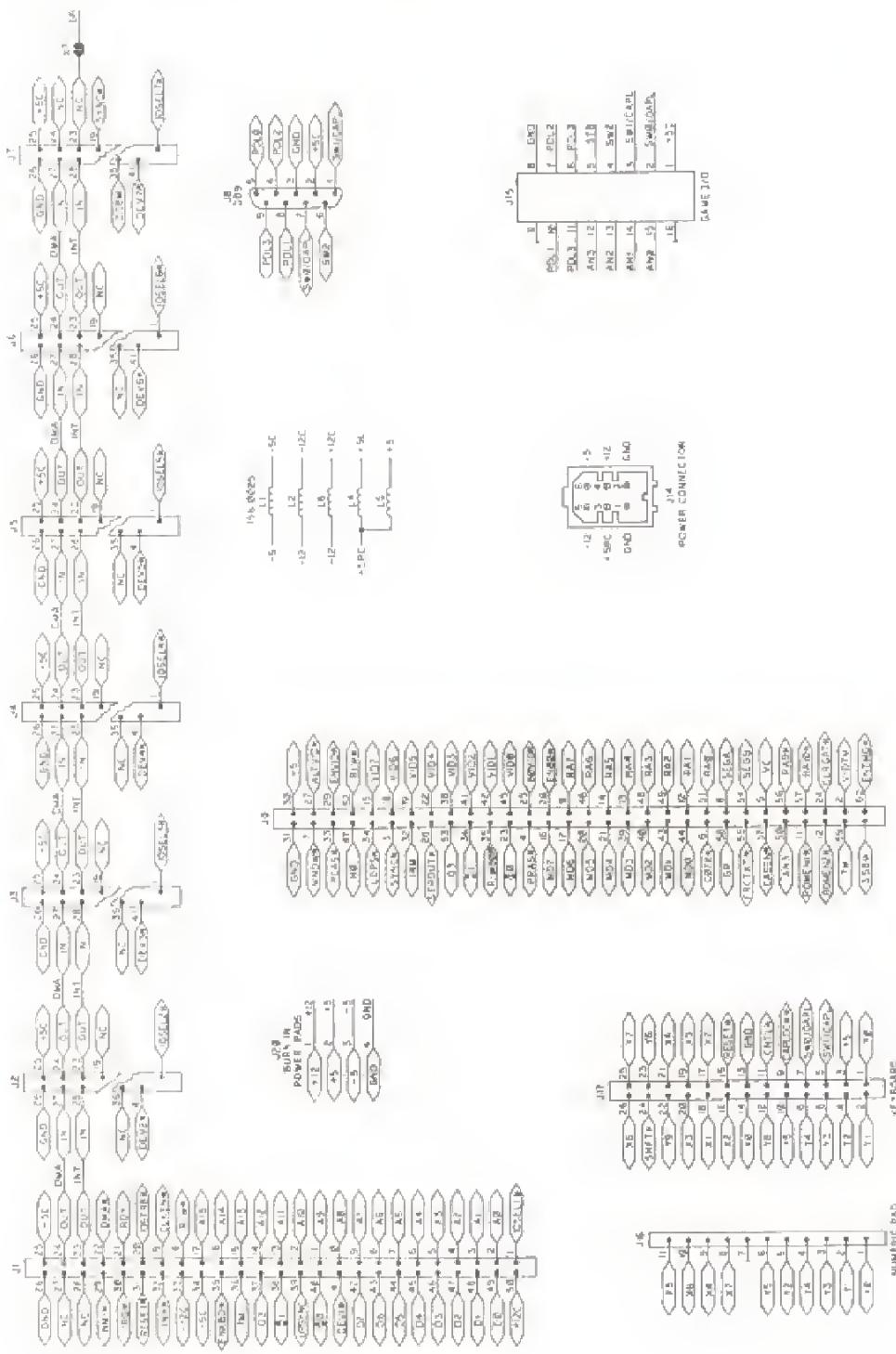


Figure 7-14c Schematic Diagram part 3



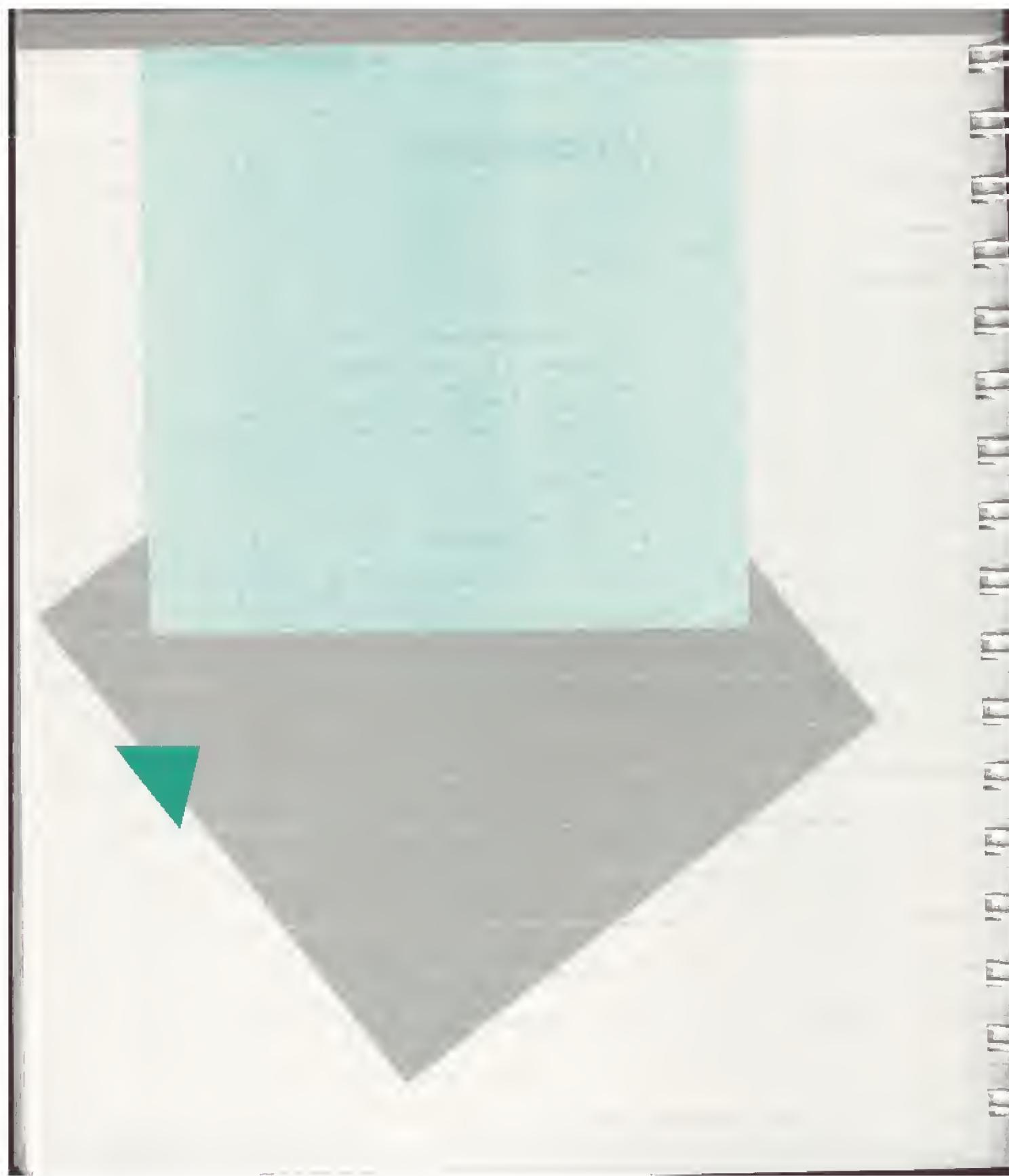
**Figure 7-14d** Schematic Diagram, part 4



# Appendices

---

- 185 Appendix A: The 6502 Instruction Set
- 197 Appendix B: Tables
- 217 Appendix C: Directory of Built-in Subroutines
- 225 Appendix D: Differences Between the Apple IIe and Apple II Plus
- 231 Glossary
- 253 Bibliography
- 257 Index
- 266 Numbers
- 266 Cast of Characters



# The 6502 Instruction Set

## The Following Notation Applies to This Summary:

A	Accumulator
X, Y	Index Registers
M	Memory
C	Borrow
P	Processor Status Register
S	Stack Pointer
✓	Change
—	No Change
+	Add
·	Logical AND
-	Subtract
⊕	Logical Exclusive Or
†	Transfer From Stack
‡	Transfer To Stack
→	Transfer To
←	Transfer To
V	Logical OR
PC	Program Counter
PCH	Program Counter High
PCL	Program Counter Low
OPER	Operand
#	Immediate Addressing Mode

FIGURE 1 ASL-SHIFT LEFT ONE BIT OPERATION



FIGURE 2 ROTATE ONE BIT LEFT (MEMORY OR ACCUMULATOR)



FIGURE 3 ROTATE ONE BIT RIGHT (MEMORY OR ACCUMULATOR)



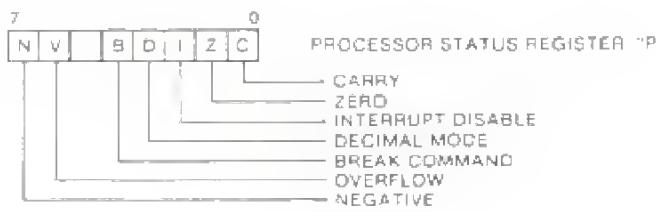
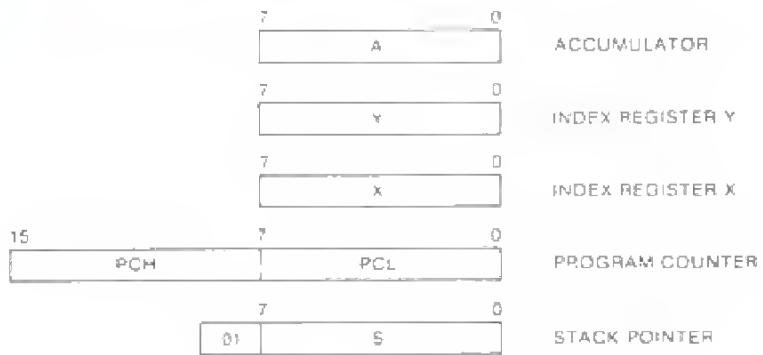
### NOTE 1: BIT = TEST BITS

Bit 6 and 7 are transferred to the status register. If the result of  $A \cdot M$  is zero then  $Z=1$ , otherwise  $Z=0$

## 6502 Microprocessor Instructions

<b>ADC</b>	Add Memory to Accumulator with Carry	<b>LDA</b>	Load Accumulator with Memory
<b>AND</b>	"AND" Memory with Accumulator	<b>LDX</b>	Load Index X with Memory
<b>ASL</b>	Shift Left One Bit (Memory or Accumulator)	<b>LDY</b>	Load Index Y with Memory
<b>BCC</b>	Branch on Carry Clear	<b>LSR</b>	Shift Right one Bit (Memory or Accumulator)
<b>BCS</b>	Branch on Carry Set	<b>NOP</b>	No Operation
<b>BEQ</b>	Branch on Result Zero	<b>DRA</b>	"DR" Memory with Accumulator
<b>BIT</b>	Test Bits in Memory with Accumulator	<b>PHA</b>	Push Accumulator on Stack
<b>BMI</b>	Branch on Result Minus	<b>PHP</b>	Push Processor Status on Stack
<b>BNE</b>	Branch on Result not Zero	<b>PLA</b>	Pull Accumulator from Stack
<b>BPL</b>	Branch on Result Plus	<b>PLP</b>	Pull Processor Status from Stack
<b>BRK</b>	Force Break	<b>ROL</b>	Rotate One Bit Left (Memory or Accumulator)
<b>BVC</b>	Branch on Overflow Clear	<b>ROR</b>	Rotate One Bit Right (Memory or Accumulator)
<b>BVS</b>	Branch on Overflow Set	<b>RTI</b>	Return from Interrupt
<b>CLC</b>	Clear Carry Flag	<b>RTS</b>	Return from Subroutine
<b>CLD</b>	Clear Decimal Mode	<b>SBC</b>	Subtract Memory from Accumulator with Borrow
<b>CLI</b>	Clear Interrupt Disable Bit	<b>SEC</b>	Set Carry Flag
<b>CLV</b>	Clear Overflow Flag	<b>SED</b>	Set Decimal Mode
<b>CMP</b>	Compare Memory and Accumulator	<b>SEI</b>	Set Interrupt Disable Status
<b>CPX</b>	Compare Memory and Index X	<b>STA</b>	Store Accumulator in Memory
<b>CPY</b>	Compare Memory and Index Y	<b>STX</b>	Store Index X in Memory
<b>DEC</b>	Decrement Memory by One	<b>STY</b>	Store Index Y in Memory
<b>DEX</b>	Decrement Index X by One	<b>TAX</b>	Transfer Accumulator to Index X
<b>DEY</b>	Decrement Index Y by One	<b>TAY</b>	Transfer Accumulator to Index Y
<b>EOR</b>	"Exclusive-Or" Memory with Accumulator	<b>TSX</b>	Transfer Stack Pointer to Index X
<b>INC</b>	Increment Memory by One	<b>TXA</b>	Transfer Index X to Accumulator
<b>INX</b>	Increment Index X by One	<b>TXS</b>	Transfer Index X to Stack Pointer
<b>INY</b>	Increment Index Y by One	<b>TYA</b>	Transfer Index Y to Accumulator
<b>JMP</b>	Jump to New Location		
<b>JSR</b>	Jump to New Location Saving Return Address		

## Programming Model



## Instruction Codes

Name Description	Operation	Addressing Mode	Assembly Language Form	HEX Op Code	No Bytes	"P" Status Reg NZC10V
<b>ADC</b> Add memory to accumulator with carry	$A + M - C \rightarrow A$	Immediate Zero Page Zero Page X Absolute Absolute X Absolute Y (Indirect X) (Indirect Y)	ADC #Oper ADC Oper ADC Oper X ADC Oper ADC Oper X ADC Oper Y ADC (Oper X) ADC (Oper Y)	69 65 75 6D 7D 79 61 71	2 2 2 3 3 3 2 2	-----
<b>AND</b> "AND" memory with accumulator	$A \wedge M \rightarrow A$	Immediate Zero Page Zero Page X Absolute Absolute X Absolute Y (Indirect X) (Indirect Y)	AND #Oper AND Oper AND Oper X AND Oper AND Oper X AND Oper Y AND (Oper X) AND (Oper Y)	29 25 35 2D 3D 39 21 31	2 2 2 3 3 3 2 2	-----
<b>ASL</b> Shift left one bit (Memory or Accumulator)	(See Figure 1)	Accumulator Zero Page Zero Page X Absolute Absolute X	ASL A ASL Oper ASL Oper X ASL Oper ASL Oper X	0A 06 16 0E 1E	1 2 2 3 3	-----
<b>BCC</b> Branch on carry clear	Branch on C=0	Relative	BCC Oper	90	2	-----
<b>BCS</b> Branch on carry set	Branch on C=1	Relative	BCS Oper	80	2	-----
<b>BEQ</b> Branch on result zero	Branch on Z=1	Relative	BEQ Oper	F0	2	-----
<b>BIT</b> Test bits in memory with accumulator	$A \wedge M_7 \rightarrow N$ , $M_6 \rightarrow V$	Zero Page Absolute	BIT <sup>1</sup> Oper BIT <sup>1</sup> Oper	24 2C	2 3	$M_7 \rightarrow N$ $M_6 \rightarrow V$
<b>BMI</b> Branch on result minus	Branch on N=1	Relative	BMI Oper	30	2	-----
<b>BNE</b> Branch on result not zero	Branch on Z=0	Relative	BNE Oper	D0	2	-----
<b>BPL</b> Branch on result plus	Branch on N=0	Relative	BPL Oper	10	2	-----
<b>BRK</b> Force Break	Forced Interrupt PC+2 + P +	Implied	BRK <sup>2</sup>	00	1	-----
<b>BVC</b> Branch on overflow clear	Branch on V=0	Relative	BVC Oper	50	2	-----

Note 1: Bits 6 and 7 are transferred to the status register. If the result of A AND M is zero, then Z = 1; otherwise Z = 0.

Note 2: A BRK command cannot be masked by setting I.

Name Description	Operation	Addressing Mode	Assembly Language Form	Hex Op Code	No Bytes	P Status Reg N Z E I O V
<b>BVS</b> Branch on overflow set	Branch on V = 1	Relative	BVS Oper	70	2	- - - - -
<b>CLC</b> Clear carry flag	D $\rightarrow$ C	Implied	CLC	18	1	- - - 0 - -
<b>CLD</b> Clear decimal mode	D $\rightarrow$ D	Implied	CLD	D8	1	- 0 - - -
<b>CLI</b>	D $\rightarrow$ I	Implied	CLI	58	1	- - - 0 - -
<b>CLV</b> Clear overflow flag	D $\rightarrow$ V	Implied	CLV	B8	1	0 - - - -
<b>CMP</b> Compare memory and accumulator	A $\rightarrow$ M	Immediate Zero Page Zero Page X Absolute Absolute X Absolute Y (Indirect X) (Indirect Y)	CMP #Oper CMP Oper CMP Oper X CMP Oper CMP Oper X CMP Oper Y CMP (Oper X) CMP (Oper Y)	C9 C5 D5 D9 D0 D9 C1 D1	2 2 2 3 3 3 2 2	✓✓✓ - - -
<b>CPX</b> Compare memory and index X	X $\rightarrow$ M	Immediate Zero Page Absolute	CPX #Oper CPX Oper CPX Oper	E0 E4 EC	2 2 3	✓✓✓
<b>CPY</b> Compare memory and index Y	Y $\rightarrow$ M	Immediate Zero Page Absolute	CPY #Oper CPY Oper CPY Oper	CD C4 CC	2 2 3	✓✓✓ - - -
<b>DEC</b> Decrement memory by one	M $\rightarrow$ M - 1	Zero Page Zero Page X Absolute Absolute X	DEC Oper DEC Oper X DEC Oper DEC Oper X	C6 D6 CE DE	2 2 3 3	✓✓
<b>DEX</b> Decrement index X by one	X $\rightarrow$ X - 1	Implied	DEX	CA	1	✓✓ - - - -
<b>DEY</b> Decrement index Y by one	Y $\rightarrow$ Y - 1	Implied	DEY	88	1	✓✓ - - - -

Name Description	Operation	Addressing Mode	Assembly Language Form	HEX Op Code	No Bytes	"P" Status Reg NZC10V
<b>EOR</b> Exclusive-Or memory with accumulator	$A \vee M \rightarrow A$	Immediate Zero Page Zero Page X Absolute Absolute X Absolute Y (Indirect X) (Indirect) Y	EOR #Oper EOR Oper EOR Oper,X EOR Oper EOR Oper,X EOR Oper,Y EOR (Oper,X) EOR (Oper) Y	49 45 55 40 50 59 41 51	2 2 2 3 3 3 2 2	✓✓ -
<b>INC</b> Increment memory by one	$M + 1 \rightarrow M$	Zero Page Zero Page,X Absolute Absolute,X	INC Oper INC Oper,X INC Oper INC Oper,X	E6 F6 EE FE	2 2 3 3	✓✓----
<b>INX</b> Increment index X by one	$X + 1 \rightarrow X$	Implied	INX	E8	1	✓✓ -
<b>INY</b> Increment index Y by one	$Y + 1 \rightarrow Y$	Implied	INY	CB	1	✓✓
<b>JMP</b> Jump to new location	$(PC+1) \rightarrow PCL$ $(PC+2) \rightarrow PCH$	Absolute Indirect	JMP Oper JMP (Oper)	4C 6C	3 3	----
<b>JSR</b> Jump to new location saving return address	$PC+2 \rightarrow$ $(PC+1) \rightarrow PCL$ $(PC+2) \rightarrow PCH$	Absolute	JSR Oper	20	3	----
<b>LDA</b> Load accumulator with memory	$M \rightarrow A$	Immediate Zero Page Zero Page X Absolute Absolute,X Absolute Y (Indirect,X) (Indirect) Y	LDA #Oper LDA Oper LDA Oper,X LDA Oper LDA Oper,X LDA Oper,Y LDA (Oper,X) LDA (Oper) Y	49 A5 B5 AD BD B9 A1 B1	2 2 2 3 3 3 2 2	✓✓----
<b>LDX</b> Load index X with memory	$M \rightarrow X$	Immediate Zero Page Zero Page Y Absolute Absolute Y	LDX #Oper LDX Oper LDX Oper,Y LDX Oper LDX Oper,Y	A2 A6 B6 AE BE	2 2 2 3 3	✓✓----
<b>LDY</b> Load index Y with memory	$M \rightarrow Y$	Immediate Zero Page Zero Page X Absolute Absolute X	LDY #Oper LDY Oper LDY Oper,X LDY Oper LDY Oper,X	A0 A4 B4 AC BC	2 2 2 3 3	✓✓ -

Name Description	Operation	Addressing Mode	Assembly Language Form	HEX Op Code	No Bytes	~P Status Reg. NZC10V
<b>LSR</b> Shift right one bit (memory or accumulator)	(See Figure 1)	Accumulator Zero Page Zero Page,X Absolute Absolute,X	LSR A LSR Oper LSR Oper,X LSR Oper LSR Oper,X	4A 46 56 4E 5E	1 2 2 3 3	✓✓✓---
<b>NOP</b> No operation	No Operation	Implied	NOP	EA	1	-----
<b>ORA</b> "OR" memory with accumulator	A V M → A	Immediate Zero Page Zero Page,X Absolute Absolute,X Absolute,Y (Indirect,X) (Indirect),Y	ORA #Oper ORA Oper ORA Oper,X ORA Oper ORA Oper,X ORA Oper,Y ORA (Oper,X) ORA (Oper),Y	09 05 15 00 10 19 01 11	2 2 2 3 3 3 2 2	✓✓---
<b>PHA</b> Push accumulator on stack	A ↓	Implied	PHA	48	1	-----
<b>PHP</b> Push processor status on stack	P ↓	Implied	PHP	08	1	-----
<b>PLA</b> Pull accumulator from stack	A ↑	Implied	PLA	68	1	✓✓---
<b>PLP</b> Pull processor status from stack	P ↑	Implied	PLP	28	1	From Stack
<b>ROL</b> Rotate one bit left (memory or accumulator)	(See Figure 2)	Accumulator Zero Page Zero Page,X Absolute Absolute,X	ROL A ROL Oper ROL Oper,X ROL Oper ROL Oper,X	2A 26 36 2E 3E	1 2 2 3 3	✓✓✓---
<b>ROR</b> Rotate one bit right (memory or accumulator)	(See Figure 3)	Accumulator Zero Page Zero Page,X Absolute Absolute,X	ROR A ROR Oper ROR Oper,X ROR Oper ROR Oper,X	6A 66 76 6E 7E	1 2 2 3 3	✓✓✓---

Name Description	Operation	Addressing Mode	Assembly Language Form	HEX OP Code	No Bytes	"Y" Status Reg X Z C I D V
<b>RTI</b> Return from interrupt	P $\downarrow$ PC $\downarrow$	Implied	RTI	40	1	From Stack
<b>RTS</b> Return from subroutine	PC $\downarrow$ PC-1 $\rightarrow$ PC	Implied	RTS	60	1	-----
<b>SBC</b> Subtract memory from accumulator with borrow	A - M $\xrightarrow{-}$ A	Immediate Zero Page Zero Page X Absolute Absolute X Absolute Y (Indirect X) (Indirect Y)	SBC #Oper SBC Oper SBC Oper X SBC Oper SBC Oper X SBC Oper Y SBC (Oper, X) SBC (Oper, Y)	E9 E5 F5 ED FD F9 E1 F1	2 2 2 3 3 3 2 2	-----
<b>SEC</b> Set carry flag	1 $\rightarrow$ C	Implied	SEC	38	1	- 1 -
<b>SED</b> Set decimal mode	1 $\rightarrow$ D	Implied	SED	F8	1	----- 1 -
<b>SEI</b> Set interrupt disable status	1 $\rightarrow$ I	Implied	SEI	78	1	- - - 1 - -
<b>STA</b> Store accumulator in memory	A $\rightarrow$ M	Zero Page Zero Page X Absolute Absolute X Absolute Y (Indirect X) (Indirect Y)	STA Oper STA Oper X STA Oper STA Oper X STA Oper Y STA (Oper, X) STA (Oper, Y)	85 95 80 90 99 81 91	2 2 3 3 3 2 2	-----
<b>STX</b> Store index X in memory	X $\rightarrow$ M	Zero Page Zero Page Y Absolute	STX Oper STX Oper, Y STX Oper	86 96 8E	2 2 3	-----
<b>STY</b> Store index Y in memory	Y $\rightarrow$ M	Zero Page Zero Page X Absolute	STY Oper STY Oper, X STY Oper	84 94 8C	2 2 3	-----
<b>TAX</b> Transfer accumulator to index X	A $\rightarrow$ X	Implied	TAX	AA	1	✓ ✓ - - -
<b>TAY</b> Transfer accumulator to index Y	A $\rightarrow$ Y	Implied	TAY	AB	1	✓ ✓ - - -
<b>TSX</b> Transfer stack pointer to index X	S $\rightarrow$ X	Implied	TSX	BA	1	✓ ✓ - - -

Name Description	Operation	Addressing Mode	Assembly Language Form	HEX Op Code	No Bytes	"P" Status Reg X Z C I D V
<b>TXA</b> Transfer index X to accumulator	$X \rightarrow A$	Implied	TXA	8A	1	✓ ---
<b>TXS</b> Transfer index X to stack pointer	$X \rightarrow S$	Implied	TXS	9A	1	-----
<b>TYA</b> Transfer index Y to accumulator	$Y \rightarrow A$	Implied	TYA	9B	1	✓✓ ---

## Hex Operation Codes

00 — BRK	2F —	5E — LSR — Absolute, X
01 — ORA — Indirect, X	30 — BMI	5F —
02 —	31 — AND — Indirect, Y	60 — RTS
03 —	32 —	61 — ADC — Indirect, X
04 —	33 —	62 —
05 — ORA — Zero Page	34 —	63 —
06 — ASL — Zero Page	35 — AND — Zero Page, X	64 —
07 —	36 — ROL — Zero Page, X	65 — ADC — Zero Page
08 — PHP	37 —	66 — ROR — Zero Page
09 — ORA — Immediate	38 — SEC	67 —
0A — ASL — Accumulator	39 — AND — Absolute, Y	68 — PLA
0B —	3A —	69 — ADC — Immediate
0C —	3B —	6A — ROR — Accumulator
0D — ORA — Absolute	3C —	6B —
0E — ASL — Absolute	3D — AND — Absolute, X	6C — JMP — Indirect
0F —	3E — ROL — Absolute, X	6D — ADC — Absolute
10 — BPL	3F —	6E — ROR — Absolute
11 — ORA — Indirect, Y	40 — RTI	6F —
12 —	41 — EOR — Indirect, X	70 — BVS
13 —	42 —	71 — ADC — Indirect, Y
14 —	43 —	72 —
15 — ORA — Zero Page, X	44 —	73 —
16 — ASL — Zero Page, X	45 — EOR — Zero Page	74 —
17 —	46 — LSR — Zero Page	75 — ADC — Zero Page, X
18 — CLC	47 —	76 — ROR — Zero Page, X
19 — ORA — Absolute, Y	48 — PHA	77 —
1A —	49 — EOR — Immediate	78 — SEI
1B —	4A — LSR — Accumulator	79 — ADC — Absolute, Y
1C —	4B —	7A —
1D — ORA — Absolute, X	4C — JMP — Absolute	7B —
1E — ASL — Absolute, X	4D — EOR — Absolute	7C —
1F —	4E — LSR — Absolute	7D — ADC — Absolute, X
20 — JSR	4F —	7E — ROR — Absolute, X
21 — AND — Indirect, X	50 — BVC	7F —
22 —	51 — EOR — Indirect, Y	80 —
23 —	52 —	81 — STA — Indirect, X
24 — BIT — Zero Page	53 —	82 —
25 — AND — Zero Page	54 —	83 —
26 — ROL — Zero Page	55 — EOR — Zero Page, X	84 — STY — Zero Page
27 —	56 — LSR — Zero Page, X	85 — STA — Zero Page
28 — PLP	57 —	86 — STX — Zero Page
29 — AND — Immediate	58 — CLI	87 —
2A — ROL — Accumulator	59 — EOR — Absolute, Y	88 — DEY
2B —	5A —	89 —
2C — BIT — Absolute	5B —	8A — TXA
2D — AND — Absolute	5C —	8B —
2E — ROL — Absolute	5D — EOR — Absolute, X	8C — STY — Absolute

8D — STA — Absolute	B4 — LDY — Zero Page X	DB —
8E — STX — Absolute	B5 — LDA — Zero Page X	DC —
8F —	B6 — LDX — Zero Page Y	DD — CMP — Absolute X
90 — BCC	B7 —	DE — DEC — Absolute X
91 — STA — Indirect Y	B8 — CLV	DF —
92 —	B9 — LDA — Absolute Y	E0 — CPX — Immediate
93 —	BA — TSX	E1 — SBC — Indirect X
94 — STY — Zero Page X	BB —	E2 —
95 — STA — Zero Page X	BC — LDY — Absolute Y	E3 —
96 — STX — Zero Page Y	BD — LDA — Absolute X	E4 — CPX — Zero Page
97 —	BE — LDX — Absolute Y	E5 — SBC — Zero Page
98 — TYA	BF —	E6 — INC — Zero Page
99 — STA — Absolute Y	C0 — CPY — Immediate	E7 —
9A — TXS	C1 — CMP — Indirect X	E8 — INX
9B —	C2 —	E9 — SBC — Immediate
9C —	C3 —	EA — NOP
9D — STA — Absolute X	C4 — CPY — Zero Page	EB —
9E —	C5 — CMP — Zero Page	EC — CPX — Absolute
9F —	C6 — DEC — Zero Page	ED — SBC — Absolute
A0 — LDY — Immediate	C7 —	EE — INC — Absolute
A1 — LDA — Indirect X	C8 — INY	EF —
A2 — LDX — Immediate	C9 — CMP — Immediate	FO — BEQ
A3 —	CA — DEX	F1 — SBC — Indirect Y
A4 — LDY — Zero Page	CB —	F2 —
A5 — LDA — Zero Page	CC — CPY — Absolute	F3 —
A6 — LDX — Zero Page	CD — CMP — Absolute	F4 —
A7 —	CE — DEC — Absolute	F5 — SBC — Zero Page X
A8 — TAY	CF —	F6 — INC — Zero Page X
A9 — LDA — Immediate	DD — BNE	F7 —
AA — TAX	DI — CMP — Indirect Y	F8 — SED
AB —	D2 —	FB — SBC — Absolute Y
AC — LDY — Absolute	D3 —	FA —
AD — Absolute	D4 —	FB —
AE — LDX — Absolute	D5 — CMP — Zero Page X	FC —
AF —	D6 — DEC — Zero Page X	FD — SBC — Absolute X
80 — BCS	D7 —	FE — INC — Absolute X
81 — LDA — Indirect Y	D8 — CLD	FF —
82 —	D9 — CMP — Absolute Y	
83 —	DA —	



## Tables

This appendix contains copies of the tables you will need to refer to a lot, for example, ASCII codes and soft-switch locations. The figures all have their original figure numbers so you can refer to the relevant sections in the text.

**Table 2-2** Keyboard Memory Locations

Location	Hex	Decimal	Description
	\$C000	49152 ~16384	Keyboard data and strobe
	\$C010	49168 ~16368	Any-key-down flag and Clear-strobe switch

**Table 2-3a** Keys and ASCII Codes

Codes are shown here in hexadecimal; to find the decimal equivalents, use Table 2-4.

Key	Normal	Control	Shift	Both
DELETE	7F	7F	7F	7F
LEFT-ARROW	08	08	08	08
TAB	09	09	09	09
DOWN-ARROW	0A	0A	0A	0A
UP-ARROW	0B	0B	0B	0B
RETURN	0D	0D	0D	0D
RIGHT-ARROW	15	15	15	15
ESC	1B	1B	1B	1B
space	20	20	20	20
~	27	27	22	22
,<	2C	2C	3C	3C
- —	2D	2D	5F	1F
,>	2E	2E	3E	3E
/?	2F	2F	3F	3F
0)	30	30	29	29
1!	31	31	21	21
2@	32	00	40	00
3#	33	33	23	23
4\$	34	34	24	24
5%	35	35	25	25
6^	36	1E	5E	1E
7&	37	37	26	26
8*	38	38	2A	2A
9(	39	39	28	28
;:	3B	3B	3A	3A
=+	3D	3D	2B	2B
[{	5B	1B	7B	1B
\	5C	1C	7C	1C

**Table 2-3b** Keys and ASCII Codes, continued

Codes are shown here in hexadecimal; to find the decimal equivalents, use Table 2-4.

Key	Normal	Control	Shift	Both
}]	5D	1D	7D	1D
' ~	60	60	7E	7E
A	61	01	41	01
B	62	02	42	02
C	63	03	43	03
D	64	04	44	04
E	65	05	45	05
F	66	06	46	06
G	67	07	47	07
H	68	08	48	08
I	69	09	49	09
J	6A	0A	4A	0A
K	6B	0B	4B	0B
L	6C	0C	4C	0C
M	6D	0D	4D	0D
N	6E	0E	4E	0E
O	6F	0F	4F	0F
P	70	10	50	10
Q	71	11	51	11
R	72	12	52	12
S	73	13	53	13
T	74	14	54	14
U	75	15	55	15
V	76	16	56	16
W	77	17	57	17
X	78	18	58	18
Y	79	19	59	19
Z	7A	1A	5A	1A

Table 2-4 The ASCII Character Set

Dec	Hex	Char									
0	00	NUL	32	20	SP	64	40	@	96	60	`
1	01	SOH	33	21	!	65	41	A	97	61	a
2	02	STX	34	22	“	66	42	B	98	62	b
3	03	ETX	35	23	#	67	43	C	99	63	c
4	04	EOT	36	24	\$	68	44	D	100	64	d
5	05	ENQ	37	25	%	69	45	E	101	65	e
6	06	ACK	38	26	&	70	46	F	102	66	f
7	07	BEL	39	27	‘	71	47	G	103	67	g
8	08	BS	40	28	(	72	48	H	104	68	h
9	09	HT	41	29	)	73	49	I	105	69	i
10	0A	LF	42	2A	“	74	4A	J	106	6A	j
11	0B	VT	43	2B	+	75	4B	K	107	6B	k
12	0C	FF	44	2C	,	76	4C	L	108	6C	l
13	0D	CR	45	2D	-	77	4D	M	109	6D	m
14	0E	SO	46	2E	.	78	4E	N	110	6E	n
15	0F	SI	47	2F	/	79	4F	O	111	6F	o
16	10	DLE	48	30	0	80	50	P	112	70	p
17	11	DC1	49	31	1	81	51	Q	113	71	q
18	12	DC2	50	32	2	82	52	R	114	72	r
19	13	DC3	51	33	3	83	53	S	115	73	s
20	14	DC4	52	34	4	84	54	T	116	74	t
21	15	NAK	53	35	5	85	55	U	117	75	u
22	16	SYN	54	36	6	86	56	V	118	76	v
23	17	ETB	55	37	7	87	57	W	119	77	w
24	18	CAN	56	38	8	88	58	X	120	78	x
25	19	EM	57	39	9	89	59	Y	121	79	y
26	1A	SUB	58	3A	:	90	5A	Z	122	7A	z
27	1B	ESC	59	3B	;	91	5B	1	123	7B	{
28	1C	FS	60	3C	<	92	5C	\	124	7C	
29	1D	GS	61	3D	=	93	5D	]	125	7D	}
30	1E	RS	62	3E	>	94	5E	^	126	7E	~
31	1F	US	63	3F	?	95	5F	—	127	7F	DEL

**Table 2-6** The Display Character Sets  
To identify particular characters and values, refer to Table 2-4.

Hex Values	Primary Character Set:		Alternate Character Set:	
	Character Type	Format	Character Type	Format
\$00-\$1F	Uppercase letters	Inverse	Uppercase letters	Inverse
\$20-\$3F	Special characters	Inverse	Special characters	Inverse
\$40-\$5F	Uppercase letters	Flashing	Uppercase letters	Inverse
\$60-\$7F	Special characters	Flashing	Lowercase letters	Inverse
\$80-\$9F	Uppercase letters	Normal	Uppercase letters	Normal
\$A0-\$BF	Special characters	Normal	Special characters	Normal
\$C0-\$DF	Uppercase letters	Normal	Uppercase letters	Normal
\$E0-\$FF	Lowercase letters	Normal	Lowercase letters	Normal

**Table 2-7** Low-resolution Graphics Colors

Colors may vary, depending upon the controls on the monitor or television set.

Nibble Value Decimal	Hex	Color	Nibble Value Decimal	Hex	Color
0	\$0	Black	8	\$8	Brown
1	\$1	Magenta	9	\$9	Orange
2	\$2	Dark Blue	10	\$A	Grey 2
3	\$3	Purple	11	\$B	Pink
4	\$4	Dark Green	12	\$C	Light Green
5	\$5	Grey 1	13	\$D	Yellow
6	\$6	Medium Blue	14	\$E	Aquamarine
7	\$7	Light Blue	15	\$F	White

**Table 2-8** High-resolution Graphics Colors

Colors may vary, depending on the adjustment of the monitor or television set.

Bits 0-6	Bit 7 Off	Bit 7 On
Adjacent columns off	Black 1	Black 2
Even columns on	Purple	Blue
Odd columns on	Green	Orange
Adjacent columns on	White 1	White 2

**Table 2-9** Video Display Page Locations

\*Note: 80-column mode uses the 1024-byte page-1 locations in both main and auxiliary memory. The PAGE 2 switch is used to select one or the other for storing data (see the section "Display Mode Switching").

Display mode	Page	Lowest Address		Highest Address	
40-column Text, Low-resolution Graphics	1	\$400	1024	\$7FF	2047
	2	\$800	2048	\$BFF	3071
80-column Text	1*	\$400	1024	\$7FF	2047
High-resolution Graphics	1	\$2000	8192	\$3FFF	16383
	2	\$4000	16384	\$5FFF	24575

**Table 2-10** Display Soft Switches

(1) This mode is only effective when graphics-mode switch is ON.  
 (2) This switch has a different function when the 80-column text card's auxiliary text page is enabled for writing. Refer to the next section, "Addressing Display Pages Directly."  
 (3) This switch changes the function of the PAGE2 switch for addressing the auxiliary text memory on the extended 80-column text card. The next section describes how to do this.  
 (4) Reading this location returns the state of the vertical blanking signal VBL. The function of VBL is described in Chapter 7 in the section "Video Output Signals."

Name	Function	Hex	Location		Notes
			Decimal		
ALTCARSET	Alternate char. set on	\$C00F	49167	-16369	Write
	Alternate char. set off	\$C00E	49166	-16370	Write
	Read ALTCARSET switch	\$C01E	49182	-16354	Read
TEXT	Text mode on	\$C051	49233	-16303	
	Text mode off (graphics)	\$C050	49232	-16304	
	Read TEXT switch	\$C01A	49178	-16358	Read
MIXED	Mixed-mode on	\$C053	49235	-16301	1
	Mixed-mode off	\$C052	49234	-16302	1
	Read MIXED switch	\$C01B	49179	-16357	Read
PAGE 2	Page 2 on	\$C055	49237	-16299	2
	Page 2 off (Page 1)	\$C054	49236	-16300	2
	Read PAGE2 switch	\$C01C	49180	-16356	Read
HIRES	Hi-res mode on	\$C057	49239	-16297	1
	Hi-res mode off	\$C056	49238	-16298	1
	Read HIRES switch	\$C01D	49181	-16355	Read
80COL	80-column display on	\$C00D	49165	-16371	Write
	80-column display off	\$C00C	49164	-16372	Write
	Read 80COL switch	\$C01F	49183	-16353	Read
80STORE	Store in auxiliary memory	\$C001	49153	-16383	Write, 3
	Store in main memory	\$C000	49152	-16384	Write, 3
	Read 80STORE switch	\$C01B	49176	-16360	Read
VBL	Read vertical blanking	\$C019	49177	-16359	Read, 4

**Table 2-11** Announcer Memory Locations

\*Pin numbers given are for the 16-pin IC connector on the circuit board.

No.	Announcer Pin*	State	Address		
			Decimal	Hex	
0	15	off	49240	-16296	\$C058
		on	49241	-16295	\$C059
1	14	off	49242	-16294	\$C05A
		on	49243	-16293	\$C05B
2	13	off	49244	-16292	\$C05C
		on	49245	-16291	\$C05D
3	12	off	49246	-16290	\$C05E
		on	49247	-16289	\$C05F

**Table 2-12** Secondary I/O Memory Locations

For connector identification and pin numbers, refer to Tables 7-17 and 7-18.

Function	Address		Notes
	Decimal	Hex	
Speaker	49200 – 16336	\$C030	Read
Cassette Out	49184 – 16352	\$C020	Read
Cassette In	49248 – 16288	\$C060	Read
Annunciator 0 On	49241 – 16295	\$C059	
Annunciator 0 Off	49240 – 16296	\$C058	
Annunciator 1 On	49243 – 16293	\$C05B	
Annunciator 1 Off	49242 – 16294	\$C05A	
Annunciator 2 On	49245 – 16291	\$C05D	
Annunciator 2 Off	49244 – 16292	\$C05C	
Annunciator 3 On	49247 – 16289	\$C05F	
Annunciator 3 Off	49246 – 16290	\$C05E	
Strobe Output	49216 – 16320	\$C040	Read
Switch Input 0 ( <b>OPEN-APPLE</b> key)	49249 – 16287	\$C061	Read
Switch Input 1 ( <b>SD1 ID-APPLE</b> key)	49250 – 16286	\$C062	Read
Switch Input 2	49251 – 16285	\$C063	Read
Analog Input Reset	49264 – 16272	\$C070	
Analog Input 0	49252 – 16284	\$C064	Read
Analog Input 1	49253 – 16283	\$C065	Read
Analog Input 2	49254 – 16282	\$C066	Read
Analog Input 3	49255 – 16281	\$C067	Read

**Table 3-3a** Control Characters with COUT1

(1) Only available when 80-column firmware is active.  
 (2) Only works from the keyboard.  
 (3) Doesn't work from the keyboard.

Control Character	ASCII Name	Apple IIe Name	Action Taken by COUT1	Notes
<b>CONTROL</b> - G	(BEL)	bell	Produces a 1000 Hz tone for 0.1 second.	
<b>CONTROL</b> - H	(BS)	backspace	Moves cursor position one space to the left, from left edge of window, moves to right end of line above.	
<b>CONTROL</b> - J	(LF)	line feed	Moves cursor position down to next line in window; scrolls if needed.	
<b>CONTROL</b> - K	(VT)	clear EOS	Clears from cursor position to the end of the window.	1
<b>CONTROL</b> - L	(FF)	clear	Moves cursor position to upper left corner of window and clears window.	1
<b>CONTROL</b> - M	(CR)	return	Moves cursor position to left end of next line in window; scrolls if needed.	
<b>CONTROL</b> - N	(SO)	normal	Sets display format normal.	1, 3
<b>CONTROL</b> - O	(SI)	inverse	Sets display format inverse.	1, 3
<b>CONTROL</b> - Q	(DC1)	40-column	Sets display to 40-column.	1
<b>CONTROL</b> - R	(DC2)	80-column	Sets display to 80-column.	1
<b>CONTROL</b> - S	(DS3)	stop-list	Stops sending characters to the display, until a key is pressed.	1, 2

**Table 3-3b** Control Characters with COUT1, continued

(1) Only available when 80-column firmware is active.  
 (2) gotoXY is not supported under BASIC; see the *Apple Pascal Operating System Reference Manual*.

Control Character	ASCII Name	Apple Ile Name	Action Taken by COUT1	Notes
<b>CONTROL</b> - U	(NAK)	quit	Deactivates 80-column firmware, homes cursor, and clears screen.	1
<b>CONTROL</b> - V	(SYN)	scroll	Scrolls the display down one line, leaving the cursor in the current position.	1
<b>CONTROL</b> - W	(ETB)	scroll-up	Scrolls the display up one line, leaving the cursor in the current position.	1
<b>CONTROL</b> - Y	(EM)	home	Moves cursor position to upper left corner of window (but doesn't clear).	1
<b>CONTROL</b> - Z	(SUB)	clear line	Clears the line the cursor position is on.	1
<b>CONTROL</b> - \	(FS)	fwd. space	Moves cursor position one space to the right; from right edge of window, moves it to left end of line below.	1
<b>CONTROL</b> - ]	(GS)	clear EOL	Clears line from cursor position to the right edge of the window.	1
<b>CONTROL</b> - ^	(RS)	gotoXY	Using the next two characters, minus 32, as one-byte X and Y values, moves the cursor position to CH=X, CV=Y.	1, 2

**Table 3-4** Text Window Memory Locations

Window Parameter	Location		Minimum Value:		Normal Values:				Maximum Values:			
	Dec	Hex	Dec	Hex	40col.	80col.	40col.	80col.	40col.	80col.	Dec	Hex
Left Edge	32	\$20	0	\$0	0	\$0	0	\$0	39	\$27	79	\$4F
Width	33	\$21	0	\$0	40	\$28	80	\$50	40	\$28	80	\$50
Top Edge	34	\$22	0	\$0	0	\$0	0	\$0	23	\$17	23	\$17
Bottom Edge	35	\$23	1	\$1	24	\$18	24	\$18	24	\$18	24	\$18

**Table 3-6** Escape Codes

(1) Old-style cursor-control key; see text.  
 (2) Cursor-control key; see text.  
 (3) This code functions only when the 80-column firmware is active.

Escape Code	Function	Notes
<b>[ESC] @</b>	Clears the window and homes the cursor	
<b>[ESC] A</b>	Moves the cursor up one line	1
<b>[ESC] B</b>	Moves the cursor right one space	1
<b>[ESC] C</b>	Moves the cursor left one space	1
<b>[ESC] D</b>	Moves the cursor down one line	1
<b>[ESC] E</b>	Clears to the end of the line	
<b>[ESC] F</b>	Clears to the bottom of the window	
<b>[ESC] I</b>	Moves the cursor up one line and turns on escape mode	2
<b>[ESC] ↑</b>	Moves the cursor left one space and turns on escape mode	2
<b>[ESC] J</b>	Moves the cursor right one space and turns on escape mode	2
<b>[ESC] ←</b>	Moves the cursor down one line and turns on escape mode	2
<b>[ESC] K</b>	Turns on restricted-case mode	3
<b>[ESC] ←</b>	Turns off restricted-case mode	3
<b>[ESC] M</b>	Switches to 40-column mode, homes the cursor, and clears the screen	3
<b>[ESC] ↓</b>	Switches to 80-column mode, homes the cursor, and clears the screen	3
<b>[ESC] [CONTROL] - Q</b>	Deactivates the 80-column firmware	3

**Table 4-5** Bank Select Switches

(1) This switch write-enables RAM and read-enables ROM.  
 (2) Two successive reads to this switch enables RAM both for reading and writing.

Switch Address	Write RAM	Read RAM	Read ROM	4K RAM Bank: First	Second	Notes
\$C080		*			*	
\$C081	*		*		*	1
\$C082			*		*	
\$C083	*	*			*	2
\$C084		*			*	
\$C085	*		*		*	1
\$C086			*		*	
\$C087	*	*			*	2
\$C088		*		*		
\$C089	*		*	*		1
\$C08A			*	*		
\$C08B	*	*		*		2
\$C08C		*		*		
\$C08D	*		*	*		1
\$C08E			*	*		
\$C08F	*	*		*		2

**Table 4-6** Auxiliary-memory Select Switches

(1) When **BOSTORE** is on, the **PAGE2** switch selects main or auxiliary display memory.  
 (2) When **BOSTORE** is on, the **HIRES** switch enables you to use the **PAGE2** switch to switch between the high-resolution page-1 area in main memory or auxiliary memory.

Name	Function	Location		Notes
		Hex	Decimal	
RAMRD	Read auxiliary memory	\$C003	49155 - 16381	Write
	Read main memory	\$C002	49154 - 16382	Write
	Read RAMRD switch	\$C013	49171 - 16365	Read
RAMWRT	Write auxiliary memory	\$C005	49157 - 16379	Write
	Write main memory	\$C004	49156 - 16380	Write
	Read RAMWRT switch	\$C014	49172 - 16354	Read
BOSTORE	On: access display page	\$C001	49153 - 16383	Write
	Off: use RAMRD, RAMWRT	\$C000	49152 - 16384	Write
	Read BOSTORE switch	\$C018	49176 - 16360	Read
PAGE2	Page 2 on (Aux. memory)	\$C055	49237 - 16299	1
	Page 2 off (Main memory)	\$C054	49236 - 16300	1
	Read PAGE2 switch	\$C01C	49180 - 16356	Read
HIRES	On: access hi-res pages	\$C057	49239 - 16297	2
	Off: use RAMRD, RAMWRT	\$C056	49238 - 16298	2
	Read HIRES switch	\$C01D	49181 - 16355	Read
ALTZP	Auxiliary stack & z. p.	\$C009	49161 - 16373	Write
	Main stack & zero page	\$C008	49160 - 16374	Write
	Read ALTZP switch	\$C016	49174 - 16352	Read

Table 4-10 Page 3 Vectors

Vector address Decimal	Vector address Hex	Vector function
1008 1009	\$3F0 \$3F1	Address of the subroutine that handles BRK requests (normally \$59, \$FA).
1010 1011	\$3F2 \$3F3	Reset vector (see text).
1012	\$3F4	Power-up byte (see text).
1013 1014 1015	\$3F5 \$3F6 \$3F7	Jump instruction to the subroutine that handles Applesoft "&" commands (normally \$4C, \$58, \$FF).
1016 1017 1018	\$3F8 \$3F9 \$3FA	Jump instruction to the subroutine that handles user ( <b>CONTROL</b> - Y) commands.
1019 1020 1021	\$3FB \$3FC \$3FD	Jump instruction to the subroutine that handles non-maskable interrupts.
1022 1023	\$3FE \$3FF	Interrupt vector (address of the subroutine that handles interrupt requests).

**Table 6-1** Peripheral-card I/O Memory Locations

Note: The enabling signal is marked with a prime, to indicate that it is an active-low signal.

Slot	Locations	Enabled by
1	\$C090-\$C09F	DEVICE SELECT'
2	\$C0A0-\$C0AF	DEVICE SELECT'
3	\$C0B0-\$C0BF	DEVICE SELECT'
4	\$C0C0-\$C0CF	DEVICE SELECT'
5	\$C0D0-\$C0DF	DEVICE SELECT'
6	\$C0E0-\$C0EF	DEVICE SELECT'
7	\$C0F0-\$C0FF	DEVICE SELECT'

**Table 6-2** Peripheral-card ROM Memory Locations

Note: The enabling signal is marked with a prime, to indicate that it is an active-low signal.

Slot	Locations	Enabled by
1	\$C100-\$C1FF	I/O SELECT'
2	\$C200-\$C2FF	I/O SELECT'
3	\$C300-\$C3FF	I/O SELECT'
4	\$C400-\$C4FF	I/O SELECT'
5	\$C500-\$C5FF	I/O SELECT'
6	\$C600-\$C6FF	I/O SELECT'
7	\$C700-\$C7FF	I/O SELECT'

**Table 6-3** Peripheral-card RAM Memory Locations

\*Note: The RAM locations normally allocated to slot 3 are taken over by any card installed in the auxiliary slot.

Base Address	Slot Number						
	1	2	3*	4	5	6	7
\$0478	\$0479	\$047A	\$047B*	\$047C	\$047D	\$047E	\$047F
\$04F8	\$04F9	\$04FA	\$04FB*	\$04FC	\$04FD	\$04FE	\$04FF
\$0578	\$0579	\$057A	\$057B*	\$057C	\$057D	\$057E	\$057F
\$05F8	\$05F9	\$05FA	\$05FB*	\$05FC	\$05FD	\$05FE	\$05FF
\$0678	\$0679	\$067A	\$067B*	\$067C	\$067D	\$067E	\$067F
\$06F8	\$06F9	\$06FA	\$06FB*	\$06FC	\$06FD	\$06FE	\$06FF
\$0778	\$0779	\$077A	\$077B*	\$077C	\$077D	\$077E	\$077F
\$07F8	\$07F9	\$07FA	\$07FB*	\$07FC	\$07FD	\$07FE	\$07FF

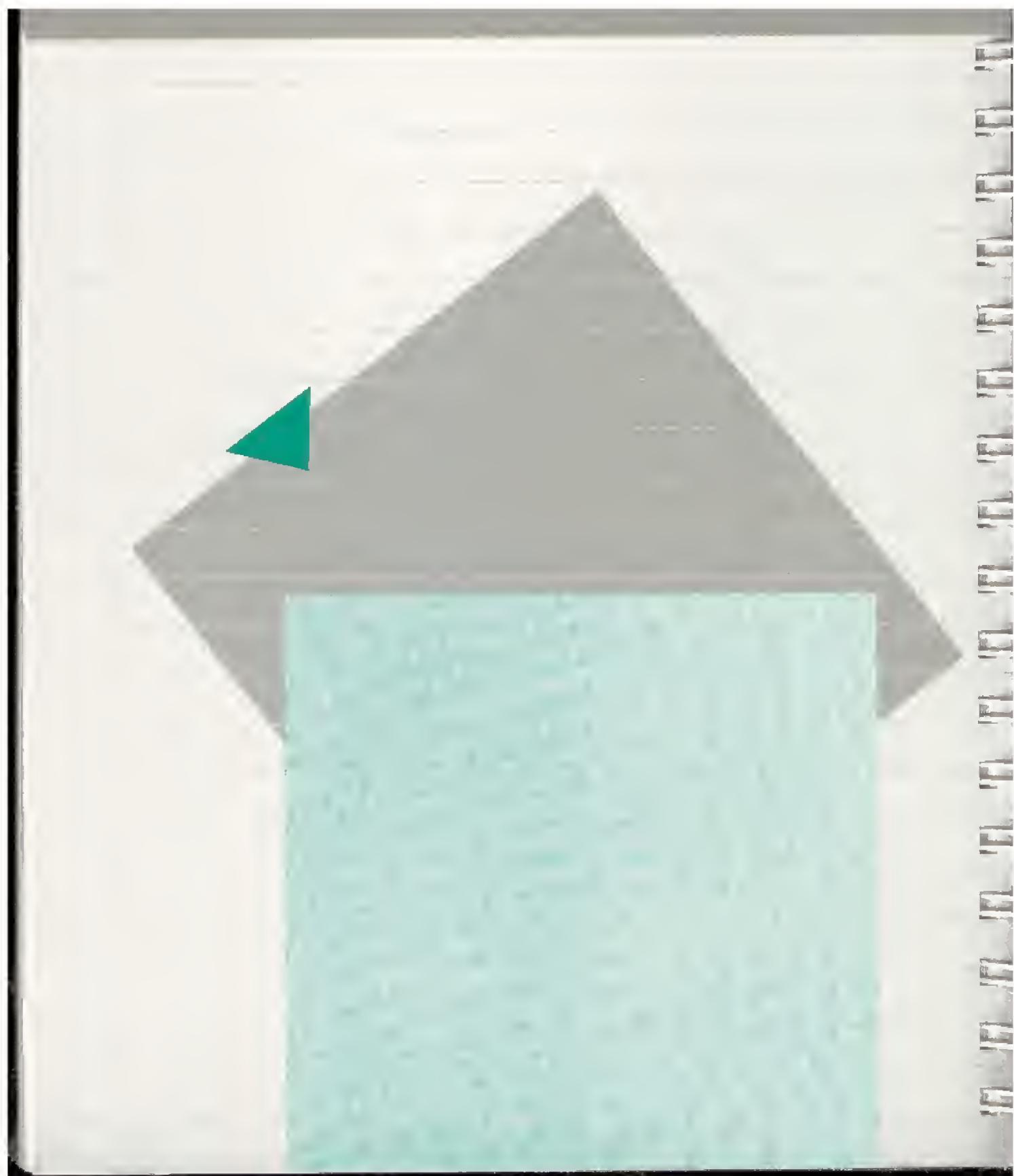
Table 6-4 Peripheral-card I/O Base Addresses

Base Address	Connector Number						
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
\$C080	\$C090	\$C0A0	\$C0B0	\$C0C0	\$C0D0	\$C0E0	\$C0F0
\$C081	\$C091	\$C0A1	\$C0B1	\$C0C1	\$C0D1	\$C0E1	\$C0F1
\$C082	\$C092	\$C0A2	\$C0B2	\$C0C2	\$C0D2	\$C0E2	\$C0F2
\$C083	\$C093	\$C0A3	\$C0B3	\$C0C3	\$C0D3	\$C0E3	\$C0F3
\$C084	\$C094	\$C0A4	\$C0B4	\$C0C4	\$C0D4	\$C0E4	\$C0F4
\$C085	\$C095	\$C0A5	\$C0B5	\$C0C5	\$C0D5	\$C0E5	\$C0F5
\$C086	\$C096	\$C0A6	\$C0B6	\$C0C6	\$C0D6	\$C0E6	\$C0F6
\$C087	\$C097	\$C0A7	\$C0B7	\$C0C7	\$C0D7	\$C0E7	\$C0F7
\$C088	\$C098	\$C0A8	\$C0B8	\$C0C8	\$C0D8	\$C0E8	\$C0F8
\$C089	\$C099	\$C0A9	\$C0B9	\$C0C9	\$C0D9	\$C0E9	\$C0F9
\$C08A	\$C09A	\$C0AA	\$C0BA	\$C0CA	\$C0DA	\$C0EA	\$C0FA
\$C08B	\$C09B	\$C0AB	\$C0BB	\$C0CB	\$C0DB	\$C0EB	\$C0FB
\$C08C	\$C09C	\$C0AC	\$C0BC	\$C0CC	\$C0DC	\$C0EC	\$C0FC
\$C08D	\$C09D	\$C0AD	\$C0BD	\$C0CD	\$C0DD	\$C0ED	\$C0FD
\$C08E	\$C09E	\$C0AE	\$C0BE	\$C0CE	\$C0DE	\$C0EE	\$C0FE
\$C08F	\$C09F	\$C0AF	\$C0BF	\$C0CF	\$C0DF	\$C0EF	\$C0FF

Table 6-5 I/O Memory Switches

Name	Function	Location		Notes
		Hex	Decimal	
SLOTC3ROM	Slot ROM at \$C300	\$C00B	49163	-16373 Write
	Internal ROM at \$C300	\$C00A	49162	-16374 Write
	Read SLOTC3ROM switch	\$C017	49175	-16361 Read
SLOTCxROM	Slot ROM at \$Cx00	\$C007	49159	-16377 Write
	Internal ROM at \$Cx00	\$C006	49158	-16378 Write
	Read SLOTCxROM switch	\$C015	49173	-16363 Read





## Directory of Built-in Subroutines

Here is a list of useful subroutines in the Apple IIe's Monitor. To use these subroutines from machine-language programs, store data into the specified memory locations or 6502 registers as required by the subroutine and execute a JSR to the subroutine's starting address. After the subroutine performs its function, it returns with the 6502's registers changed as described.



### Warning

For the sake of compatibility between the Apple II Plus and the Apple IIe, do not jump into the middle of Monitor subroutines. The starting addresses are the same for all models of the Apple II, but the actual code is different.

<b>BELL</b>	Output a bell character	\$FF3A
BELL writes a bell ([ <b>CONTROL</b> ]-G) character to the current output device. It leaves the accumulator holding \$87.		
<b>BELL1</b>	Send a beep to the speaker	\$FBDD
BELL1 generates a 1 kHz tone in the Apple IIe's speaker for 0.1 second. It scrambles the A and X registers.		
<b>CLREOL</b>	Clear to end of line	\$FC9C
CLREOL clears a text line from the cursor position to the right edge of the window. CLREOL destroys the contents of A and Y.		
<b>CLEOLZ</b>	Clear to end of line	\$FC9E
CLEOLZ clears a text line to the right edge of the window, starting at the location given by base address BASL indexed by the contents of the Y register. CLEOLZ destroys the contents of A and Y.		

<b>CLREOP</b> Clear to end of window	\$FC42
CLREOP clears the text window from the cursor position to the bottom of the window. CLREOP destroys the contents of A and Y.	
<b>CLRSCR</b> Clear the low-resolution screen	\$F832
CLRSCR clears the low-resolution graphics display to black. If you call CLRSCR while the video display is in text mode, it fills the screen with inverse-mode at-sign (@) characters. CLRSCR destroys the contents of A and Y.	
<b>CLRTOP</b> Clear the low-resolution screen	\$F836
CLRTOP is the same as CLRSCR (above), except that it clears only the top 40 rows of the low-resolution display.	
<b>COUT</b> Output a character	\$FDED
COUT calls the current character output subroutine. The character to be output should be in the accumulator. COUT calls the subroutine whose address is stored in CSW (locations \$36 and \$37), which is usually the standard character output COUT1.	
<b>COUT1</b> Output to screen	\$FDF0
COUT1 displays the character in the accumulator on the Apple IIe's screen at the current output cursor position and advances the output cursor. It places the character using the setting of the Normal/Inverse location. It handles the control characters <b>RETURN</b> , linefeed, backspace, and bell. It returns with all registers intact.	
<b>CROUT</b> Generate a <b>RETURN</b>	\$FD8E
CROUT sends a <b>RETURN</b> character to the current output device.	
<b>CROUT1</b> <b>RETURN</b> with clear	\$FD8B
CROUT1 clears the screen from the current cursor position to the edge of the text window, then calls CROUT.	
<b>GETLN</b> Get an input line with prompt	\$FD6A
GETLN is the standard input subroutine for entire lines of characters, as described in Chapter 3. Your program calls GETLN	

with the prompt character in location \$33; GETLN returns with the input line in the input buffer (beginning at location \$200) and the X register holding the length of the input line.

**GETLNZ** Get an input line \$FD67

GETLNZ is an alternate entry point for GETLN that sends a carriage return to the standard output, then continues into GETLN.

**GETLN1** Get an input line, no prompt \$FD6F

GETLN1 is an alternate entry point for GETLN that does not issue a prompt before it accepts the input line. If, however, the user cancels the input line, either with too many backspaces or with a **CONTROL** -X, then GETLN1 will issue the contents of location \$33 as a prompt when it gets another line.

**HLINE** Draw a horizontal line of blocks \$F819

HLINE draws a horizontal line of blocks of the color set by SETCOL on the low-resolution graphics display. Call HLINE with the vertical coordinate of the line in the accumulator, the leftmost horizontal coordinate in the Y register, and the rightmost horizontal coordinate in location \$20. HLINE returns with A and Y scrambled, X intact.

**HOME** Home cursor and clear \$FD58

HOME clears the display and puts the cursor in the home position: the upper left corner of the screen.

**IOREST** Restore all registers \$FF3F

IOREST loads the 6502's internal registers with the contents of memory locations \$45 through \$49.

**IOSAVE** Save all registers \$FF4A

IOSAVE stores the contents of the 6502's internal registers in locations \$45 through \$49 in the order A, X, Y, P, S. The contents of A and X are changed and the decimal mode is cleared.

**KEYIN** Read the keyboard \$FD1B

KEYIN is the keyboard input subroutine. It reads the Apple IIe's keyboard, waits for a keypress, and randomizes the random

number seed at \$4E-\$4F. When a key is pressed, KEYIN removes the blinking cursor from the display and returns with the keycode in the accumulator. KEYIN is described in Chapter 3.

**MOVE** Move a block of memory \$FE2C

MOVE copies the contents of memory from one range of locations to another. This subroutine is the same as the MOVE command in the Monitor, except it takes its arguments from pairs of locations in memory, low-byte first. The destination address must be in A4 (\$42-\$43), the starting source address in A1 (\$3C-\$3D), and the ending source address in A2 (\$3E-\$3F) when your program calls MOVE.

**NEXTCOL** Increment color by 3 \$F85F

NEXTCOL adds 3 to the current color (set by SETCOL) used for low-resolution graphics.

**PLOT** Plot on the low-resolution screen \$F800

PLOT puts a single block of the color value set by SETCOL on the low-resolution display screen. The block's vertical position is passed in the accumulator, its horizontal position in the Y register. PLOT returns with the accumulator scrambled, but X and Y intact.

**PRBLNK** Print 3 spaces \$F948

PRBLNK outputs three blank spaces to the standard output device. On return, the accumulator usually contains \$A0, the X register contains 0.

**PRBL2** Print many blank spaces \$F94A

PRBL2 outputs from 1 to 256 blanks to the standard output device. Upon entry, the X register should contain the number of blanks to be output. If X=\$00, then PRBL2 will output 256 blanks.

**PRBYTE** Print a hexadecimal byte \$FDDA

PRBYTE outputs the contents of the accumulator in hexadecimal on the current output device. The contents of the accumulator are scrambled.

**PREAD** Read a hand control \$FB1E

PREAD returns a number that represents the position of a hand control. You pass the number of the hand control in the X register. If this number is not valid (not equal to 0, 1, 2, or 3), strange things may happen. PREAD returns with a number from \$00 to \$FF in the Y register. The accumulator is scrambled.

**PRERR** Print ERR \$FF2D

PRERR sends the word ERR, followed by a bell character, to the standard output device. On return, the accumulator is scrambled.

**PRHEX** Print a hexadecimal digit \$FDE3

PRHEX prints the lower nibble of the accumulator as a single hexadecimal digit. On return, the contents of the accumulator are scrambled.

**PRNTAX** Print A and X in hexadecimal \$F941

PRNTAX prints the contents of the A and X registers as a four-digit hexadecimal value. The accumulator contains the first byte output, the X register contains the second. On return, the contents of the accumulator are scrambled.

**RDCHAR** Get an input character or ESC code \$FD35

RDCHAR is an alternate input subroutine that gets characters from the standard input subroutine, and also interprets the escape codes listed in Chapter 3.

**RDKEY** Get an input character \$FD0C

RDKEY is the character input subroutine. It places a blinking cursor on the display at the cursor position and jumps to the subroutine whose address is stored in KSW (locations \$38 and \$39), usually the standard input subroutine KEYIN, which returns with a character in the accumulator.

**READ** Read a record from a cassette \$FEFD

READ reads a series of tones at the cassette input port, converts them to data bytes, and stores the data in a specified range of

memory locations. Before calling READ, the address of the first byte must be in A1 (\$3C-\$3D) and the address of the last byte in A2 (\$3E-\$3F.)

READ keeps a running Exclusive OR of the data bytes in CHKSUM (\$2E). When the last location has been filled, READ reads one more byte and compares it with CHKSUM. If equal, READ sends out a beep, and returns; if not, it sends "ERR" through COUT, sends the beep, and returns.

**SCRN** Read the low-resolution graphics screen \$FB71

SCRN returns the color value of a single block on the low-resolution graphics display. Call it with the vertical position of the block in the accumulator and the horizontal position in the Y register. Call it as you would call PLOT (above). The color of the block will be returned in the accumulator. No other registers are changed.

**SETCOL** Set low-resolution graphics color \$FB64

SETCOL sets the color used for plotting in low-resolution graphics to the value passed in the accumulator. The colors and their values are listed in Table 2-7.

**SETINV** Set Inverse mode \$FE80

SETINV sets the display format to inverse. COUT1 will then display all output characters as black dots on a white background. The Y register is set to \$3F, all others are unchanged.

**SETNORM** Set Normal mode \$FE84

SETNORM sets the display format to normal. COUT1 will then display all output characters as white dots on a black background. On return, the Y register is set to \$FF, all others are unchanged.

**VERIFY** Compare two blocks of memory \$FE36

VERIFY compares the contents of one range of memory to another. This subroutine is the same as the VERIFY command in the Monitor, except it takes its arguments from pairs of locations in memory, low-byte first. The destination address must be in A4 (\$42-\$43), the starting source address in A1 (\$3C-\$3D), and the ending source address in A2 (\$3E-\$3F) when your program calls VERIFY.

**VLINE** Draw a vertical line of blocks**\$F828**

**VLINE** draws a vertical line of blocks of the color set by **SETCOL** on the low-resolution display. You should call **VLINE** with the horizontal coordinate of the line in the Y register, the top vertical coordinate in the accumulator, and the bottom vertical coordinate in location **\$2D**. **VLINE** will return with the accumulator scrambled.

**WAIT** Delay**\$FCA8**

**WAIT** delays for a specific amount of time, then returns to the program that called it. The amount of delay is specified by the contents of the accumulator. With A the contents of the accumulator, the delay is  $1/2(26+27A+5A^2)$  microseconds. **WAIT** returns with the accumulator zeroed and the X and Y registers undisturbed.

**WRITE** Write a record on a cassette**\$FECD**

**WRITE** converts the data in a range of memory to a series of tones at the cassette output port. Before calling **WRITE**, the address of the first data byte must be in A1 (**\$3C-\$3D**) and the address of the last byte in A2 (**\$3E-\$3F**). The subroutine writes a ten-second continuous tone as a header, then writes the data followed by a one-byte checksum.



## *Differences Between the Apple IIe and the Apple II Plus*

The Apple IIe is the latest model Apple II, and it includes several improvements over the older models. The improvements and other differences are listed here in approximately the order you are likely to encounter them: obvious differences first, technical details later. Each entry in the list includes references to the chapters in this manual where the item is described.

### **Full Keyboard**

The Apple IIe has a full 62-key uppercase and lowercase keyboard. The keyboard includes fully-operational **SHIFT** and **CAPS LOCK** keys. It also includes four directional arrow keys for moving the cursor. Chapter 2 includes a description of the keyboard. The cursor-motion keys are described in Chapter 3.

### **Apple Keys**

The keyboard of the Apple IIe has two keys marked with the Apple logo. These keys, called the **OPEN-APPLE** and **SOLID-APPLE** keys, are used with the **RESET** key to select special reset functions. They are connected to the buttons on the hand controls, so they can be used for special functions in programs.

### **Lowercase Display**

The Apple IIe can display the full ASCII character set, uppercase and lowercase. For compatibility with older Apple II's, the standard display character set includes flashing uppercase instead of inverse-format lowercase; you can also switch to an alternate character set with inverse lowercase and uppercase, but no flashing. Chapter 2 includes a description of the display character sets. Chapter 3 tells you how to switch display formats.

## **Optional 80-column Display**

With the addition of an 80-column text card, the Apple IIe can display 80 columns of text. The 80-column display is completely compatible with both graphics modes — you can even use it in mixed mode. (If you prefer, you can use an old-style 80-column card in an expansion slot instead.) Chapter 2 includes a description of the 80-column display.

## **Additional Escape and Control Keys**

The display features mentioned above (and many others not mentioned) can be controlled from the keyboard by escape sequences and from programs by control characters. Chapter 3 includes descriptions of those escape codes and control characters.

## **Built-in Language Card**

The 16K bytes of RAM you add to the Apple II Plus by installing the Language Card is built into the Apple IIe, giving it a standard memory size of 64K bytes. In the Apple IIe, this 16K-byte block of memory is called the Bank-switched Memory. It is described in Chapter 4.

## **Optional Auxiliary Memory**

By installing an extended 80-column text card, you can add an alternate 64K bytes of RAM to the Apple IIe. Chapter 4 tells you how to use the additional memory. (Compatibility note: the extended 80-column text card also provides the 80-column display option.)

## **Auxiliary Slot**

In addition to the normal expansion slots there is a special slot that is used either for the optional 80-column text card or for the extended 80-column text card. This slot is identified in Chapter 1 and described in Chapter 7.

## **Back Panel and Connectors**

The Apple IIe has a metal back panel with space for several D-type connectors. Each peripheral card you add comes with a connector that you install in the back panel. Chapter 1 includes a description of the back panel; for details, see the installation instructions supplied with the peripheral cards.

## **Additional Soft Switches — Readable, Too**

The additional display and memory features of the Apple IIe are controlled by soft switches like the ones on the Apple II Plus. On the Apple IIe, programs can also read the settings of the soft switches. Chapter 2 describes the soft switches that control the display features, and Chapter 4 describes the soft switches that control the memory features.

## **Built-in Self Test**

The Apple IIe has additional built-in firmware that includes a self-test routine. The self-test is intended primarily for testing during manufacturing, but you can run it to be sure the Apple IIe is working correctly. The self-test is described in Chapter 4.

## **Forced Reset**

Some programs on the Apple II Plus take control of the reset function to keep users from stopping the machine and copying the program. The Apple IIe has a forced reset that writes over the program in memory. By using the forced reset, you can restart the Apple IIe without turning power off and on and causing unnecessary stress on the circuits. The forced reset is described in Chapter 4.

## **Interrupt Handling**

Even though most application programs don't use interrupts, the Apple IIe provides for interrupt-driven programs. For example, the 80-column firmware periodically enables interrupts while it is clearing the display (normally a long time to have interrupts locked out). Interrupts are discussed in Chapter 6.

## **Vertical Sync for Animators**

Programs with animation can now stay in step with the display and avoid flickering objects in their displays. Chapter 7 includes a description of the video generation and the vertical sync.

## **Apple IIe Signature Byte**

A program can find out whether it's running on an Apple IIe or on an older model Apple II by reading the byte at location \$FBB3 in the System Monitor. In the Apple IIe Monitor, this byte's value is \$06; in the Autostart Monitor (the standard Monitor on the Apple II Plus), its value is \$EA. (Note: if you start up with DOS

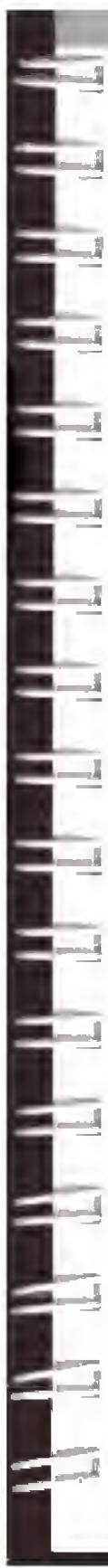
and switch to Integer BASIC, the Autostart Monitor is active and the value at location \$FBB3 is \$EA, even on an Apple IIe.) Obviously, there are lots of other locations that have different values in the different versions of the Monitor; location \$FBB3 was chosen because it will have the value \$06 even in future revisions of the Apple IIe Monitor.

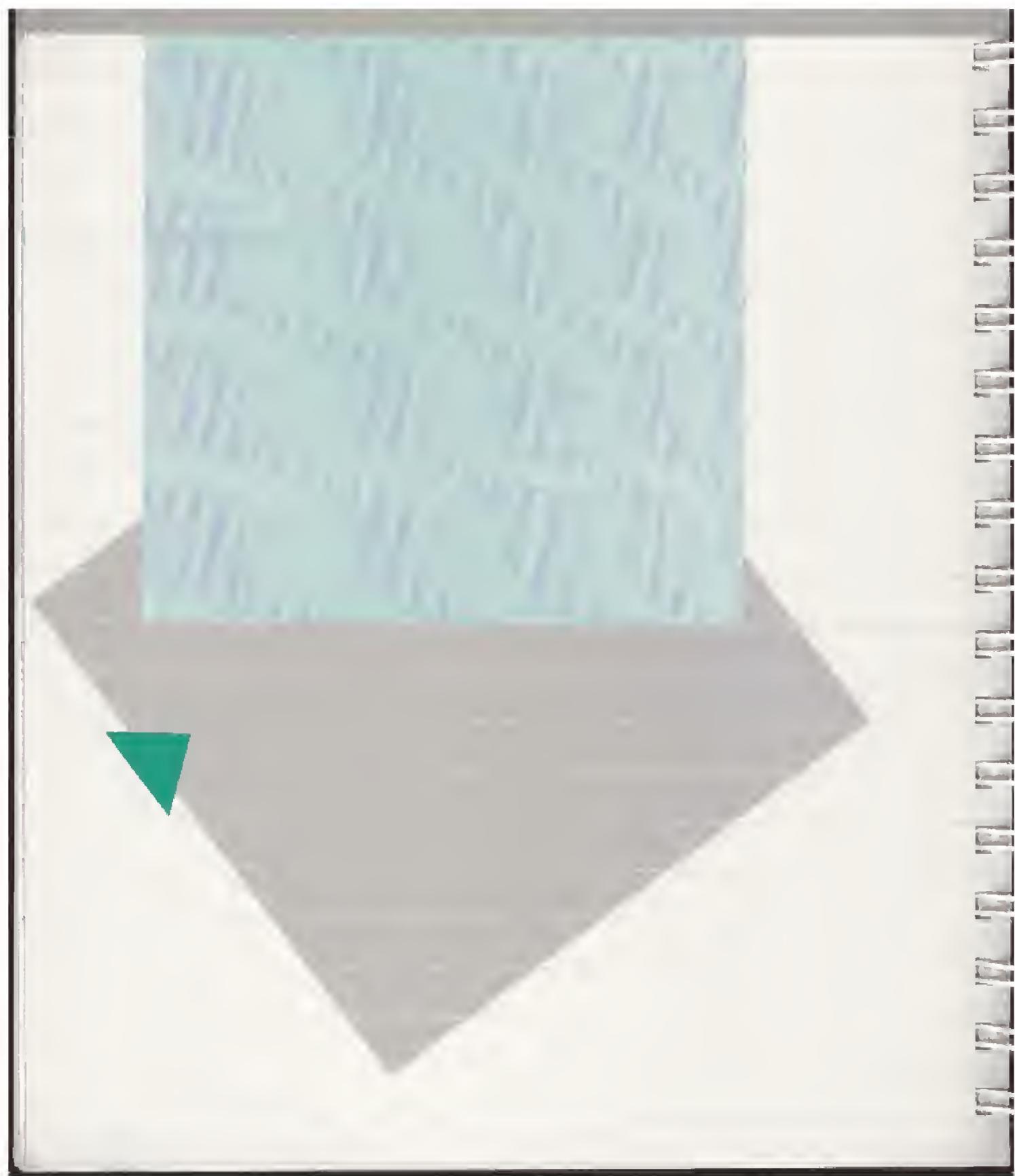
## ***Hardware Implementation***

The hardware implementation of the Apple IIe is radically different from the Apple II and Apple II Plus. Three of the more important differences are

- The custom ICs: the IOU and MMU;
- The video hardware, which uses ROM to generate both text and graphics;
- The peripheral data bus, which is fully buffered.

All of these features are described in Chapter 7.





# Glossary

**6502:** The microprocessor used in the Apple IIe computer.

**accumulator:** The register in the 6502 microprocessor where most computations are performed.

**acronym:** A word formed from the initial letters of a name or phrase, such as laser, from Light Amplification by Stimulated Emission of Radiation.

**ADC:** See **analog-to-digital converter**.

**address:** A number used to identify something, such as a location in the computer's memory.

**analog:** Represented in terms of a physical quantity, such as a voltage, frequency, length, or position, that can vary smoothly and continuously over a range of values. For example, a conventional 12-hour clock face (remember those?) is an analog device that represents the time of day in terms of the angles of the clock's hands. Compare **digital**.

**analog-to-digital converter:** A device that converts quantities from analog to digital form. For example, the Apple IIe's hand control converts the position of the control dial (an analog quantity) into a discrete number (a digital quantity) that changes abruptly even when the dial is turned smoothly.

**AND:** A logical operator that produces a true result if both of its operands are true, a false result if either or both of its operands are false; compare **OR**, **exclusive OR**, **NOT**.

**Apple IIe:** A personal computer in the Apple II family, manufactured and sold by Apple Computer.

**Apple IIe 80-Column Text Card:** A peripheral card made and sold by Apple Computer that plugs into the Apple IIe's auxiliary slot and converts the computer's display of text from 40- to 80-column width.

**Apple IIe Extended 80-Column Text Card:** A peripheral card made and sold by Apple Computer that plugs into the Apple IIe's auxiliary slot and converts the computer's display of text from 40- to 80-column width while extending its memory capacity by 64K bytes.

**Applesoft:** An extended version of the BASIC programming language used with the Apple IIe computer. An interpreter for creating and executing programs in Applesoft is built into the Apple IIe system in firmware.

**ASCII:** American Standard Code for Information Interchange; a code in which the numbers from 0 to 127 stand for text characters, used for representing text inside a computer and for transmitting text between computers or between a computer and a peripheral device.

**assembler:** A language translator that converts a program written in assembly language into an equivalent program in machine language.

**assembly language:** A low-level programming language in which individual machine-language instructions are written in a symbolic form more easily understood by a human programmer than machine language itself.

**auxiliary slot:** The special expansion slot inside the Apple IIe used for the Apple 80-Column Text Card or Extended 80-Column Text Card.

**back panel:** The rear face of the Apple IIe computer, which includes the power switch, the power connector, and connectors for a video display device, a cassette tape recorder, and other peripheral devices.

**bandwidth:** A measure of the range of frequencies a device can handle. In the case of a video monitor, greater bandwidth enables it to display more information; to display 80 columns of text, a monitor should have a bandwidth of at least 12 MHz.

**base address:** In indexed addressing, the fixed component of an address.

**binary:** The representation of numbers in terms of powers of two, using the two digits 0 and 1. Commonly used in computers, since the values 0 and 1 can easily be represented in physical form in a variety of ways, such as the presence or absence of current, positive or negative voltage, or a white or black dot on the display screen.

**binary operator:** An operator that combines two operands to produce a result; for example, OR is a binary logical operator. Compare **unary operator**.

**bit:** A binary digit (0 or 1); the smallest possible unit of information, consisting of a simple two-way choice, such as yes or no, on or off, positive or negative, something or nothing.

**bit bucket:** The final resting place of all information; see **write-only memory**.

**board:** See **printed-circuit board**.

**boot:** To start up a computer by loading a program into memory from an external storage medium such as a disk. Often accomplished by first loading a small program whose purpose is to read the larger program into memory. The program is said to "pull itself in by its own bootstraps"; hence the term **bootstrapping** or **booting**.

**bootstrap:** See **boot**.

**buffer:** An area of the computer's memory reserved for a specific purpose, such as to hold graphical information to be displayed on the screen or text characters being read from some peripheral device. Often used as an intermediary "holding area" for transferring information between devices operating at different speeds, such as the computer's processor and a printer or disk drive. Information can be stored into the buffer by one device and then read out by the other at a different speed.

**bus:** A group of wires that transmit related information, such as the bits of an address, from one part of a computer system to another.

**byte:** A unit of information consisting of a fixed number of bits; on the Apple IIe, one byte consists of eight bits and can hold any value from 0 to 255.

**card:** See **peripheral card**.

**carrier:** A broadcast radio signal that is modulated in order to transmit information.

**carry flag:** A status bit in the 6502 microprocessor, used in addition and subtraction to hold the high-order bit (the **carry bit**).

**cathode-ray tube:** An electronic device, such as a television picture tube, that produces images on a screen coated with phosphors that emit light when struck by a focused beam of electrons.

**central processing unit:** See **processor**.

**character:** A letter, digit, punctuation mark, or other written symbol used in printing or displaying information in a form readable by humans.

**character code:** A number used to represent a text character for processing by a computer system.

**chip:** The small piece of semiconducting material (usually silicon) on which an integrated circuit is fabricated. The word *chip* properly refers only to the piece of silicon itself, but is often used for an integrated circuit and its package; see **integrated circuit**.

**code:** (1) A number or symbol used to represent some piece of information in a compact or easily processed form. (2) The statements or instructions making up a program.

**cold start:** The process of starting up the Apple IIe when the power is first turned on (or as if the power had just been turned on) by loading the operating system into main memory, then loading and running a program. Compare **warm start**.

**command:** A communication from the user to a computer system (usually typed from the keyboard) directing it to perform some immediate action.

**compiler:** A language translator that converts a program written in a high-level programming language into an equivalent program in some lower-level language (such as machine language) for later execution. Compare **Interpreter**.

**component:** A part; in particular, a part of a computer system.

**composite video:** A video signal that includes both display information and the synchronization (and other) signals needed to display it.

**computer:** An electronic device for performing predefined (programmed) computations at high speed and with great accuracy.

**computer system:** A computer and its associated hardware, firmware, and software.

**connector:** a physical device such as a plug, socket, or jack, used to connect one hardware component of a system to another.

**control character:** A character that controls or modifies the way information is printed or displayed. Control characters have ASCII codes between 0 and 31 and are typed from the Apple IIe keyboard by holding down the **CONTROL** key while typing some other character. For example, the character **CONTROL**-M (ASCII code 13) means "return to the beginning of the line" and is equivalent to the **RETURN** key.

**controller card:** A peripheral card that connects a device such as a printer or disk drive to the Apple IIe and controls the operation of the device.

**CPU:** Central processing unit; see **processor**.

**crash:** To cease operating unexpectedly, possibly damaging or destroying information in the process.

**CRT:** See **cathode-ray tube**.

**cursor:** A marker or symbol displayed on the screen that marks where the user's next action will take effect or where the next character typed from the keyboard will appear.

**DAC:** See **digital-to-analog converter**.

**data:** Information; especially information used or operated on by a program.

**debug:** To locate and correct an error or the cause of a problem or malfunction in a computer system. Typically used to refer to software-related problems; compare **troubleshoot**.

**decimal:** The common form of number representation used in everyday life, in which numbers are expressed in terms of powers of ten, using the ten digits 0 to 9.

**default:** A value, action, or setting that is automatically used by a computer system when no other explicit information has been given. For example, if a command to run a program from a disk does not identify which disk drive to use, the Disk Operating System will automatically use the same drive that was used in the last operation.

**defenestration:** The act of throwing something through, from, or out of a window. Not recommended handling of an Apple IIe.

**demodulate:** To recover the information being transmitted by a modulated signal; for example, a conventional radio receiver demodulates an incoming broadcast signal to convert it into sound emitted by a speaker.

**device:** (1) A physical apparatus for performing a particular task or achieving a particular purpose. (2) In particular, a hardware component of a computer system.

**device handler:** See **device driver**.

**device driver:** A program that manages the transfer of information between the computer and a peripheral device.

**digit:** (1) One of the characters 0 to 9, used to express numbers in decimal form. (2) One of the characters used to express numbers in some other form, such as 0 and 1 in binary or 0 to 9 and A to F in hexadecimal.

**digital:** Represented in a discrete (noncontinuous) form, such as numerical digits. For example, contemporary digital clocks display the time in numerical form (such as 2:57) instead of using the positions of a pair of hands on a clock face. Compare **analog**.

**digital-to-analog converter:** A device that converts quantities from digital to analog form.

**DIP:** See **dual in-line package**.

**disassembler:** A language translator that converts a machine-language program into an equivalent program in assembly language, more easily understood by a human programmer. The opposite of an assembler.

**disk:** An information storage medium consisting of a flat, circular magnetic surface on which information can be recorded in the form of small magnetized spots, similarly to the way sounds are recorded on tape.

**disk controller card:** A peripheral card that connects one or two disk drives to the Apple IIe and controls their operation.

**disk drive:** A peripheral device that writes and reads information on the surface of a magnetic disk.

**diskette:** A term sometimes used for the small (5-1/4-inch) flexible disks used with the Apple Disk II drive.

**Disk II drive:** A model of disk drive made and sold by Apple Computer for use with the Apple IIe computer; uses 5-1/4-inch flexible ("floppy") disks.

**Disk Operating System:** An optional software system for the Apple IIe that enables the computer to control and communicate with one or more Disk II drives.

**display:** (1) Information exhibited visually, especially on the screen of a display device. (2) To exhibit information visually. (3) A display device.

**display device:** A device that exhibits information visually, such as a television receiver or video monitor.

**display screen:** The glass or plastic panel on the front of a display device, on which images are displayed.

**DOS:** See **Disk Operating System**.

**dual in-line package:** An integrated circuit packaged in a narrow rectangular box with a row of metal pins along each side; similar in appearance to an armored centipede.

**edit:** To change or modify; for example, to insert, remove, replace, or move text in a document.

**editor:** A program that enables the user to create and edit information of a particular form; for example, a **text editor** or a **graphics editor**.

**effective address:** In machine-language programming, the address of the memory location on which a particular instruction actually operates, which may be arrived at by indexed addressing or some other addressing method.

**error message:** A message displayed or printed to notify the user of an error or problem in the execution of a program.

**escape mode:** A state of the Apple IIe computer, entered by pressing the **[ESC]** key, in which certain keys on the keyboard take on special meanings for positioning the cursor and controlling the display of text on the screen.

**escape sequence:** A sequence of keystrokes beginning with the **[ESC]** key, used for positioning the cursor and controlling the display of text on the screen.

**exclusive OR:** A logical operator that produces a true result if one of its operands is true and the other false, a false result if its operands are both true or both false; compare **OR**, **AND**, **NOT**.

**execute:** To perform or carry out a specified action or sequence of actions, such as those described by a program.

**expansion slot:** A connector inside the Apple IIe computer in which a peripheral card can be installed; sometimes called *peripheral slot*.

**firmware:** Those components of a computer system consisting of programs stored permanently in read-only memory. Such programs (for example, the Applesoft interpreter and the Apple IIe Monitor program) are built into the computer at the factory; they can be executed at any time but cannot be modified or erased from main memory. Compare **hardware**, **software**.

**fixed-point:** A method of representing numbers inside the computer in which the decimal point (more correctly, the binary point) is considered to occur at a fixed position within the number. Typically, the point is considered to lie at the right end of the number, so that the number is interpreted as an integer. Compare **floating-point**.

**flexible disk:** A disk made of flexible plastic; often called a "floppy" disk. Compare **rigid disk**.

**floating-point:** A method of representing numbers inside the computer in which the decimal point (more correctly, the binary point) is permitted to "float" to different positions within the number. Some of the bits within the number itself are used to keep track of the point's position. Compare **fixed-point**.

**GAME I/O connector:** A special 16-pin connector inside the Apple IIe, originally designed for connecting hand controls to the computer, but also used for connecting some other peripheral devices. Compare **hand control connector**.

**graphics:** (1) Information presented in the form of pictures or images. (2) The display of pictures or images on a computer's display screen. Compare **text**.

**hand control:** An optional peripheral device that can be connected to the Apple IIe's hand control connector and has a rotating dial and a pushbutton; typically used to control game-playing programs, but can be used in more serious applications as well.

**hand control connector:** A 9-pin connector on the Apple IIe's back panel, used for connecting hand controls to the computer. Compare **GAME I/O connector**.

**hardware:** Those components of a computer system consisting of physical (electronic or mechanical) devices. Compare **software, firmware**.

**hertz:** The unit of frequency of vibration or oscillation, also called cycles per second; named for the physicist Heinrich Hertz and abbreviated Hz. The current provided by a standard power outlet alternates at a rate of 60 hertz; that is, it changes polarity 60 times each second. The Apple IIe's 6502 microprocessor operates at a clock frequency of 1 million hertz, or 1 megahertz (MHz).

**hexadecimal:** The representation of numbers in terms of powers of sixteen, using the sixteen digits 0 to 9 and A to F. Hexadecimal numbers are easier for humans to read and understand than binary numbers, but can be converted easily and directly to binary form: each hexadecimal digit corresponds to a sequence of four binary digits, or bits.

**high-level language:** A programming language that is relatively easy for humans to understand. A single statement in a high-level language typically corresponds to several instructions of machine language.

**high-order byte:** The more significant half of a memory address or other two-byte quantity. In the Apple IIe's 6502 microprocessor, the low-order byte of an address is usually stored first and the high-order byte second.

**high-resolution graphics:** The display of graphics on the Apple IIe's display screen as a six-color array of points, 280 columns wide and 192 rows high.

**hold time:** In computer circuits, the amount of time a signal must remain valid after some related signal has been turned off; compare setup time.

**Hz:** See **hertz**.

**IC:** See **Integrated circuit**.

**information:** Facts, concepts, or instructions represented in an organized form.

**index:** (1) A number used to identify a member of a list or table by its sequential position. (2) A list or table whose entries are identified by sequential position. (3) In machine-language programming, the variable component of an indexed address, contained in an index register and added to the base address to form the effective address.

**indexed addressing:** A method of specifying memory addresses used in machine-language programming.

**index register:** A register in a computer processor that holds an index for use in indexed addressing. The Apple IIe's 6502 microprocessor has two index registers, called the X register and the Y register.

**input:** (1) Information transferred into a computer from some external source, such as the keyboard, a disk drive, or a modem. (2) The act or process of transferring such information.

**instruction:** A unit of a machine-language or assembly-language program corresponding to a single action for the computer's processor to perform.

**integer:** A whole number, with no fractional part; represented inside the computer in fixed-point form. Compare **real number**.

**integrated circuit:** An electronic component consisting of many circuit elements fabricated on a single piece of semiconducting material, such as silicon; see **chip**.

**interface:** The devices, rules, or conventions by which one component of a system communicates with another.

**interface card:** A peripheral card that implements a particular interface (such as a parallel or serial interface) by which the computer can communicate with a peripheral device such as a printer or modem.

**interpreter:** A language translator that reads a program written in a particular programming language and immediately carries out the actions that the program describes. Compare **compiler**.

**interrupt:** A temporary suspension in the execution of a program by a computer in order to perform some other task, typically in response to a signal from a peripheral device or other source external to the computer.

**inverse video:** The display of text on the computer's display screen in the form of black dots on a white (or other single phosphor color) background, instead of the usual white dots on a black background.

**I/O:** Input/output; the transfer of information into and out of a computer. See **input**, **output**.

**I/O device:** Input/output device; a device that transfers information into or out of a computer. See **input**, **output**, **peripheral device**.

**I/O link:** A fixed location that contains the address of an input/output subroutine in the Apple IIe Monitor program.

**K:** Two to the tenth power, or 1024 (from the Greek root *kilo*, meaning one thousand); for example, 64K equals 64 times 1024, or 65,536.

**keyboard:** The set of keys built into the Apple IIe computer, similar to a typewriter keyboard, for typing information to the computer.

**keystroke:** The act of pressing a single key or a combination of keys (such as **CONTROL**-C) on the Apple IIe keyboard.

**kilobyte:** A unit of information consisting of 1K (1024) bytes, or 8K (8192) bits; see K.

**KSW:** The symbolic name of the location in the Apple IIe's memory where the standard input link is stored; stands for "keyboard switch." See **I/O link**.

**language:** See **programming language**.

**language translator:** A system program that reads a program written in a particular programming language and either executes it directly or converts it into some other language (such as machine language) for later execution. See **interpreter**, **compiler**, **assembler**.

**load:** To transfer information from a peripheral storage medium (such as a disk) into main memory for use; for example, to transfer a program into memory for execution.

**location:** See **memory location**.

**logical operator:** An operator, such as **AND**, that combines logical values to produce a logical result.

**low-level language:** A programming language that is relatively close to the form that the computer's processor can execute directly. Low-level languages available for the Apple IIe include 6502 machine language and 6502 assembly language.

**low-order byte:** The less significant half of a memory address or other two-byte quantity. In the Apple IIe's 6502 microprocessor, the low-order byte of an address is usually stored first and the high-order byte second.

**low-power Shottkey:** A type of TTL integrated circuit having lower power and higher speed than a conventional **TTL** integrated circuit.

**low-resolution graphics:** The display of graphics on the Apple IIe's display screen as a sixteen-color array of blocks, 40 columns wide and 48 rows high.

**LS:** See **low-power Shottkey**.

**machine language:** The form in which instructions to a computer are stored in memory for direct execution by the computer's processor. Each model of computer processor (such as the 6502 microprocessor used in the Apple IIe) has its own form of machine language.

**main memory:** The memory component of a computer system that is built into the computer itself and whose contents are directly accessible to the processor.

**memory:** A hardware component of a computer system that can store information for later retrieval; see **main memory**, **random-access memory**, **read-only memory**, **read-write memory**, **write-only memory**.

**memory location:** A unit of main memory that is identified by an address and can hold a single item of information of a fixed size; in the Apple IIe, a memory location holds one byte, or eight bits, of information.

**memory-resident:** (1) Stored permanently in main memory, as firmware. (2) Held continually in main memory even while not in use, as the Disk Operating System.

**MHz:** Megahertz; one million hertz. See **hertz**.

**microcomputer:** A computer, such as the Apple IIe, whose processor is a microprocessor.

**microprocessor:** A computer processor contained in a single integrated circuit, such as the 6502 microprocessor used in the Apple IIe.

**microsecond:** One millionth of a second; abbreviated  $\mu$ s.

**millisecond:** One thousandth of a second; abbreviated ms.

**mode:** A state of a computer or system that determines its behavior.

**modem:** Modulator/demodulator; a peripheral device that enables the computer to transmit and receive information over a telephone line.

**modulate:** To modify or alter a signal so as to transmit information; for example, conventional broadcast radio transmits sound by modulating the amplitude (amplitude modulation, or AM) or the frequency (frequency modulation, or FM) of a carrier signal.

**monitor:** See **video monitor**.

**Monitor program:** A system program built into the Apple IIe in firmware, used for directly inspecting or changing the contents of main memory and for operating the computer at the machine-language level.

**nanosecond:** One billionth (in British usage, one thousand-millionth) of a second; abbreviated ns.

**network:** A collection of interconnected, individually controlled computers, together with the hardware and software used to connect them.

**nibble:** A unit of information equal to half a byte, four bits, or fifty cents; can hold any value from 0 to 15. Sometimes spelled *nybble*.

**NOT:** A unary logical operator that produces a true result if its operand is false, a false result if its operand is true; compare **AND**, **OR**, **exclusive OR**.

**NTSC:** (1) National Television Standards Committee; the committee that defined the standard format used for transmitting broadcast video signals in the United States. (2) The standard video format defined by the NTSC.

**object code:** See **object program**.

**object program:** The translated form of a program produced by a language translator such as a compiler or assembler; also called **object code**. Compare **source program**.

**op code:** See **operation code**.

**operand:** A value to which an operator is applied.

**operating system:** A software system that organizes the computer's resources and capabilities and makes them available to the user or to application programs running on the computer.

**operation code:** The part of a machine-language instruction that specifies the operation to be performed; often called **op code**.

**operator:** A symbol or sequence of characters, such as + or AND, specifying an operation to be performed on one or more values (the **operands**) to produce a result.

**OR:** A logical operator that produces a true result if either or both of its operands are true, a false result if both of its operands are false; compare **exclusive OR**, **AND**, **NOT**.

**output:** (1) Information transferred from a computer to some external destination, such as the display screen, a disk drive, a printer, or a modem. (2) The act or process of transferring such information.

**page:** (1) A screenful of information on a video display, consisting on the Apple IIe of 24 lines of 40 or 80 characters each. (2) An area of main memory containing text or graphical information being displayed on the screen. (3) A segment of main memory 256 bytes long and beginning at an address that is an even multiple of 256 bytes.

**page zero:** See **zero page**.

**parallel interface:** An interface in which many bits of information (typically eight bits, or one byte) are transmitted simultaneously over different wires or channels. Compare **serial interface**.

**PC board:** See **printed-circuit board**.

**peripheral:** At or outside the boundaries of the computer itself, either physically (as a *peripheral device*) or in a logical sense (as a *peripheral card*).

**peripheral bus:** The bus used for transmitting information between the Apple IIe computer and peripheral devices connected to the computer's expansion slots.

**peripheral card:** A removable printed-circuit board that plugs into one of the Apple IIe's expansion slots and expands or modifies the computer's capabilities by connecting a peripheral device or performing some subsidiary or peripheral function.

**peripheral device:** A device, such as a video monitor, disk drive, printer, or modem, used in conjunction with a computer. Often (but not necessarily) physically separate from the computer and connected to it by wires, cables, or some other form of interface, typically by means of a peripheral card.

**peripheral slot:** See **expansion slot**.

**phase:** (1) A stage in a periodic process; a point in a cycle; for example, the 6502 microprocessor uses a clock cycle consisting of two phases called  $\phi_0$  and  $\phi_1$ . (2) The relationship between two periodic signals or processes; for example, in NTSC color video, the color of a point on the screen is expressed by the instantaneous phase of the video signal relative to the color reference signal.

**pipelining:** A feature of a processor that enables it to begin fetching the next instruction before it has finished executing the current instruction. All other things equal, processors that have this feature run faster than those without it.

**pointer:** An item of information consisting of the memory address of some other item.

**pop:** To remove the top entry from a stack.

**port:** The point of connection, usually a physical connector, between a computer and a peripheral device, another computer, or a network.

**power supply:** The hardware component of a computer that draws electrical power from a power outlet and converts it to the forms needed by other hardware components.

**printed-circuit board:** A hardware component of a computer or other electronic device, consisting of a flat, rectangular piece of rigid material, commonly fiberglass, to which integrated circuits and other electronic components are connected.

**printer:** A peripheral device that writes information on paper in a form easily readable by humans or literate monkeys.

**processor:** The hardware component of a computer that performs the actual computation by directly executing instructions represented in machine language and stored in main memory.

**program:** (1) A set of instructions describing actions for a computer to perform in order to accomplish some task, conforming to the rules and conventions of a particular programming language. (2) To write a program.

**programming language:** A set of rules or conventions for writing programs.

**prompt:** To remind or signal the user that some action is expected, typically by displaying a distinctive symbol, a reminder message, or a menu of choices on the display screen.

**prompt character:** A text character displayed on the screen to prompt the user for some action. Often also identifies the program or component of the system that is doing the prompting; for example, the prompt character `:` is used by the Applesoft BASIC interpreter, `>` by Integer BASIC, and `*` by the system Monitor program. Also called *prompting character*.

**prompt message:** A message displayed on the screen to prompt the user for some action. Also called *prompting message*.

**push:** To add an entry to the top of a stack.

**radio-frequency modulator:** A device for converting the video signals produced by a computer to a form that can be accepted by a television receiver.

**RAM:** See **random-access memory**.

**random-access memory:** Memory in which the contents of individual locations can be referred to in an arbitrary or random order. This term is often used incorrectly to refer to read-write memory, but strictly speaking both read-only and read-write

memory can be accessed in random order. This misuse of the term *random-access* is an attempt to confuse new users, creating a rite of passage and an excellent market for glossaries of computer terms. Compare **read-only memory**, **read-write memory**, **write-only memory**.

**raster:** The pattern of parallel lines making up the image on a video display screen. The image is produced by controlling the brightness of successive dots on the individual lines of the raster.

**read:** To transfer information into the computer's memory from a source external to the computer (such as a disk drive or modem) or into the computer's processor from a source external to the processor (such as the keyboard or main memory).

**read-only memory:** Memory whose contents can be read but not written; used for storing firmware. Information is written into read-only memory once, during manufacture; it then remains there permanently, even when the computer's power is turned off, and can never be erased or changed. Compare **read-write memory**, **random-access memory**, **write-only memory**.

**read-write memory:** Memory whose contents can both be read and written; often misleadingly called *random-access memory*, or *RAM*. The information contained in read-write memory is erased when the computer's power is turned off, and is permanently lost unless it has been saved on a more permanent storage medium, such as a disk. Compare **read-only memory**, **random-access memory**, **write-only memory**.

**real number:** A number that may include a fractional part; represented inside the computer in floating-point form. Compare **integer**.

**register:** A location in a computer processor where an item of information, such as a byte, is held and modified under program control. Registers in the 6502 microprocessor include the accumulator (A), two index registers (X and Y), the stack pointer (S), the processor status register (P), and the program counter (PC). The PC register holds two bytes (sixteen bits); the other registers hold one byte (eight bits) each.

**return address:** The point in a program to which control returns on completion of a subroutine.

**RF modulator:** See **radio-frequency modulator**.

**rigid disk:** A disk made of a hard, nonflexible material. Compare **flexible disk**.

**ROM:** See **read-only memory**.

**routine:** A part of a program that accomplishes some task subordinate to the overall task of the program.

**run:** (1) To execute a program. (2) To load a program into main memory from a peripheral storage medium, such as a disk, and execute it.

**save:** To transfer information from main memory to a peripheral storage medium for later use.

**screen:** See **display screen**.

**scroll:** To change the contents of all or part of the display screen by shifting information out at one end (most often the top) to make room for new information appearing at the other end (most often the bottom), producing an effect like that of moving a scroll of paper past a fixed viewing window. See **viewport, window**.

**serial interface:** An interface in which information is transmitted sequentially, one bit at a time, over a single wire or channel. Compare **parallel interface**.

**setup time:** The amount of time a signal must be valid in advance of some event; compare **hold time**.

**silicon:** A non-metallic, semiconducting chemical element from which integrated circuits are made. Not to be confused with *silica* — that is, silicon dioxide, such as quartz, opal, or sand — or with *silicone*, any of a group of organic compounds containing silicon.

**soft switch:** A means of changing some feature of the Apple IIe from within a program; specifically, a location in memory that produces some special effect whenever its contents are read or written.

**software:** Those components of a computer system consisting of programs that determine or control the behavior of the computer. Compare **hardware, firmware**.

**source code:** See **source program**.

**source program:** The original form of a program given to a language translator such as a compiler or assembler for conversion into another form; sometimes called *source code*. Compare **object program**.

**space character:** A text character whose printed representation is a blank space, typed from the keyboard by pressing the **[SPACE]** bar.

**stack:** A list in which entries are added or removed at one end only (the top of the stack), causing them to be removed in LIFO (last-in-first-out) order.

**string:** An item of information consisting of a sequence of text characters.

**strobe:** (1) An event, such as a change in a signal, that triggers some action. (2) A signal whose change is used to trigger some action.

**subroutine:** A part of a program that can be executed on request from any point in the program, and which returns control to the point of the request on completion.

**system:** A coordinated collection of interrelated and interacting parts organized to perform some function or achieve some purpose.

**television receiver:** A display device capable of receiving broadcast video signals (such as commercial television) by means of an antenna. Can be used in combination with a radio-frequency modulator as a display device for the Apple IIe computer. Compare **video monitor**.

**television set:** See **television receiver**.

**terminal:** A device consisting of a typewriterlike keyboard and a display device, used for communicating between a computer system and a human user. Personal computers such as the Apple IIe typically have all or part of a terminal built into them.

**text:** (1) Information presented in the form of characters readable by humans. (2) The display of characters on the Apple IIe's display screen. Compare **graphics**.

**text window:** An area on the Apple IIe's display screen within which text is displayed and scrolled.

**transistor-transistor logic:** (1) A family of integrated circuits used in computers and related devices. (2) A standard for interconnecting such circuits that defines the voltages used to represent logical zeros and ones.

**troubleshoot:** To locate and correct the cause of a problem or malfunction in a computer system. Typically used to refer to hardware-related problems; compare **debug**.

**TTL:** See **transistor-transistor logic**.

**unary operator:** An operator that applies to a single operand; for example, the minus sign (-) in a negative number such as -6 is a unary arithmetic operator. Compare **binary operator**.

**user:** The person operating or controlling a computer system.

**user interface:** The rules and conventions by which a computer system communicates with the person operating it.

**vector:** (1) The starting address of a program segment, when used as a common point for transferring control from other programs. (2) A memory location used to hold a vector, or the address of such a location.

**video:** (1) A medium for transmitting information in the form of images to be displayed on the screen of a cathode-ray tube. (2) Information organized or transmitted in video form. (3) An early space pioneer.

**video monitor:** A display device capable of receiving video signals by direct connection only, and which cannot receive broadcast signals such as commercial television. Can be connected directly to the Apple IIe computer as a display device. Compare **television receiver**.

**viewport:** All or part of the display screen, used by an application program to display a portion of the information (such as a document, picture, or worksheet) that the program is working on. Compare **window**.

**warm start:** The process of restarting the Apple IIe after the power is already on, without reloading the operating system into main memory and often without losing the program or information already in main memory. Compare **cold start**.

**window:** (1) The portion of a collection of information (such as a document, picture, or worksheet) that is visible in a viewport on the display screen; compare **viewport**. (2) A viewport. (3) A flat, rectangular panel, usually made of silica, used in many archaic structures as a human-to-nature interface.

**word:** A group of bits of a fixed size that is treated as a unit; the number of bits in a word is a characteristic of each particular computer.

**wraparound:** The automatic continuation of text from the end of one line to the beginning of the next, as on the display screen or a printer.

**write:** To transfer information from the computer to a destination external to the computer (such as a disk drive, printer, or modem) or from the computer's processor to a destination external to the processor (such as main memory).

**write-only memory:** A form of computer memory into which information can be stored but never, ever retrieved, developed under government contract in 1975 by Professor Horberg T. Farnsfarlie. Farnsfarlie's original prototype, approximately one inch on each side, has so far been used to store more than 100 trillion words of surplus federal information. Farnsfarlie's critics have denounced his project as a six-million-dollar boondoggle, but his defenders point out that this excess information would have cost more than 250 billion dollars to store in conventional media. Compare **read-only memory**, **read-write memory**, **random-access memory**.

**X register:** One of the index registers in the 6502 microprocessor.

**Y register:** One of the index registers in the 6502 microprocessor.

**zero page:** The first page (256 bytes) of the Apple IIe's memory, also called *page zero*. Since the high-order byte of any address in this page is zero, only the low-order byte is needed to specify a zero-page address; this makes zero-page locations more efficient to address, in both time and space, than locations in any other page of memory.





## Bibliography

Apple Computer, Inc.: *Apple IIe Applesoft Reference Manual*; Apple Computer Inc., 1982, Cupertino, CA. Apple product number A2L2004

— *Apple II Applesoft Tutorial Manual*; Apple Computer Inc., 1982, Cupertino, CA. Apple product number A2L2003

— *Apple II BASIC Programming Manual*; Apple Computer Inc., 1978, Cupertino, CA. Apple product number A2L0005

— *Apple II Monitors Peeled*; Apple Computer Inc., 1978, Cupertino, California. Apple product number D2L0013

— *Apple IIe Owner's Manual*; Apple Computer Inc., 1982, Cupertino, CA. Apple product number A2L2001

— *Programmer's Aid #1 Installation and Operating Manual*; Apple Computer Inc., 1978, Cupertino, California. Apple product number A2L0011

Leventhal, Lance: *6502 Assembly Language Programming*; Osborne/McGraw-Hill, 1979, Berkeley, CA.

Synertek, Incorporated: *Hardware Manual*; Synertek Incorporated, 1976, Santa Clara, CA. Apple product number A2L0002

— *Programming Manual*; Synertek Incorporated, 1976, Santa Clara, CA. Apple product number A2L0003

Watson, Allen, III: "More Colors for Your Apple"; *Byte*, Vol. 4, No. 6, June, 1979. Byte Publications, Inc. Peterborough, NH

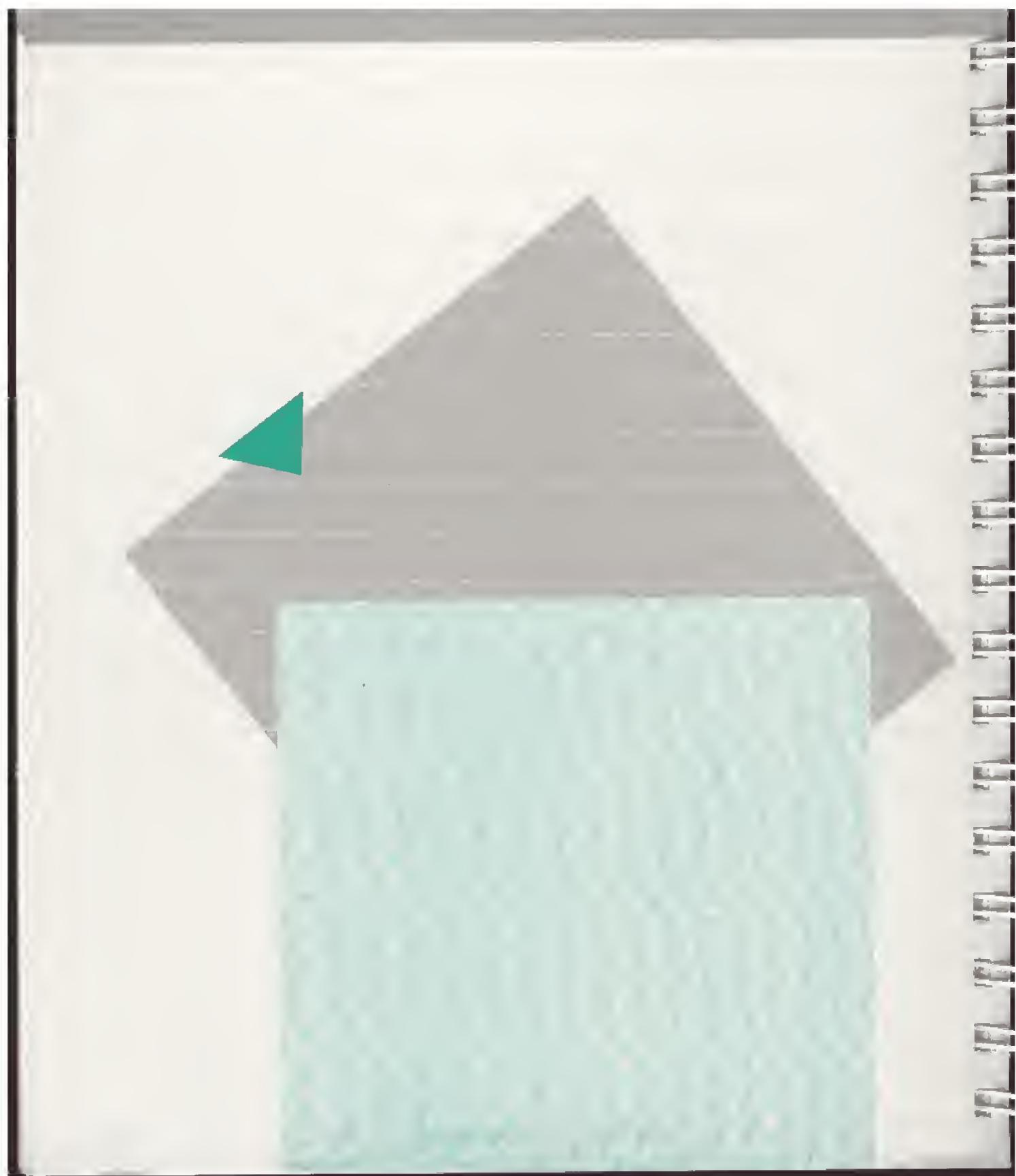
— "Simplified Theory of Video Graphics, Part I"; *Byte*, Vol. 5, No. 11, November, 1980. Byte Publications, Inc. Peterborough, NH

— "Simplified Theory of Video Graphics, Part II"; *Byte*, Vol. 5, No. 12, December, 1980. Byte Publications, Inc. Peterborough, NH

Wozniak, Steve: "System Description: The Apple II"; *Byte*, Vol. 2, No. 5, May, 1977. Byte Publications, Inc. Peterborough, NH

— "SWEET16: The 6502 Dream Machine"; *Byte*, Vol. 2, No. 10, October, 1977. Byte Publications, Inc. Peterborough, NH





## Index

## A

A1 77-8  
 A1H 77  
 A1L 77  
 A2 77-8  
 A2H 77  
 A2L 77  
 A4 77-8  
 A4H 77  
 A4L 77  
 absolute address 108  
 accumulator 54, 78-9, 126-8,  
     140, 185, 187  
 ADC 188  
 addition 103  
 address bus 6, 35, 140, 142,  
     169-70  
 address decoding, I/O 164  
 address space 63, 140, 148  
 addresses  
     absolute 108  
     base 64, 126-129  
     in Monitor commands 88  
     Mini-assembler 113  
     multiplexed 151  
     RAM 151  
     relative 108, 114, 126  
 addressing, relative 108, 114,  
     126  
 addressing, zero-page 113  
 ALTCHARSET soft switch 20, 28,  
     45, 145  
 alternate character set 19-21, 45,  
     52-4, 158  
 ALTZP soft switch 74-7, 143  
 analog input memory locations 40  
 analog input reset 40  
 analog inputs 37, 39, 167  
 AND function 62  
 AND instruction 188  
 annunciator memory locations 40

annunciators 35, 37, 79, 164,  
     167

Any-key-down 15, 164

Any-key-down flag 13, 15

Apple II

character sets 20  
 compatibility 76  
 GETLN 58  
 making IIe resemble 44  
 memory use 68

*Apple II BASIC Programming Manual* 13

Apple II Plus

character sets 20  
 compatibility 76  
 cursor-motion keys 56  
 GETLN 58  
 making IIe resemble 44  
 memory use 68  
 reset 70

Apple keys 12, 17, 38, 40

Apple Mini-assembler 57, 110-14

Applesoft BASIC

and bank-switched memory 68  
 and page zero 64, 66, 92  
 and reset routine 80  
 and I/O subroutines 43  
 decimal addresses with 13, 27  
 interpreter 6, 148  
 prompt 57  
 returning to 102  
 statements 45

*Applesoft Reference Manual* 6

*Applesoft Tutorial* 6, 58

arrow keys 12, 58

ASCII codes 12-17, 21

ASCII character set 6, 16, 19

ASL 188

assemblers 108, 110

Assembler/Editor 110

assembly language  
and AUXMOVE 77  
and bank switching 70  
and display pages 29  
and I/O links 130  
and indirect addressing 64  
and machine language 108-9  
and standard subroutines 43  
hexadecimal addresses with 13  
prompt character 57  
with Mini-assembler 110-113  
asterisk 57, 87  
audio cassettes 36, 98  
automatic repeat 11  
Autostart Monitor 47  
auxiliary memory 26, 30, 71-78  
auxiliary RAM 63, 71, 79  
auxiliary slot 7, 21, 71  
and reset routine 79  
and slot 3 46, 123-4, 132-3  
signals 174-5  
auxiliary-memory subroutines 76  
auxiliary-RAM enable signals 175  
AUXMOVE subroutine 76-8

## B

back panel 8  
backspace 58  
backspace character 58  
bandwidth 17  
bank switches 69  
bank switching 68-71  
bank-switched memory 68-72,  
73-4  
and reset 79  
bank-switched RAM 68-70, 74,  
80, 110  
base addresses 64, 126-129  
BASIC  
and auxiliary memory 71  
and GETLN 56-7  
and I/O 103, 129-30  
and reserved memory 71  
and soft switches 29  
and stop-list mode 50  
and taping data 37  
and zero page 64  
compared to machine  
language 107  
Invoking Monitor from 87  
reading analog inputs 40  
reading switch input 38  
returning to from Mini-  
assembler 112  
returning to from Monitor 88,  
102

BASIC, Applesoft  
see Applesoft BASIC  
BASIC, Integer  
see Integer BASIC  
BCC 188  
BCS 188  
BEQ 188  
BELL subroutine 36  
BIT 188  
bit patterns, high-resolution 161  
bit, high-order  
see high-order bit  
bit-mapped 24  
black-and-white monitor 24  
blanking intervals 153  
blanking, horizontal 153  
blanking, vertical 154  
blinking cursor 43, 54, 87, 110  
BMI 188  
BNE 188  
bootstrap 80  
borrow 185  
BPL 188  
BRK 97, 108, 140, 188  
BRK requests 82  
BRK vector 131  
buffer, bus 170  
buffer, input 56-8, 64, 106  
buffers, display 24, 65  
buffers, three-state 170  
built-in 80-column firmware  
see 80-column firmware  
built-in subroutines 76-78  
bus buffer 170  
bus, address 6, 35, 140, 142,  
169, 170  
bus, data 170  
BVC 188  
BVS 189

## C

CALL -151 87, 110, 112  
cancel line 58  
CAPS LOCK key 12, 13, 17, 44,  
58  
card, language 68, 70, 121  
cards, peripheral see peripheral  
cards and 80-column text card  
carry bit 77, 78, 187  
CAS 151  
cassette I/O 11, 35-6, 40, 98,  
164, 166  
cassette recorder 8, 36, 166  
central processing unit 6, 140,  
143, 151

CH 50-1  
 character generator 158-62  
 Character output Switch 48,129,  
     130  
 character set, alternate 19-21,  
     45, 52-4, 158  
 character set, ASCII 5, 16, 19  
 character set, primary 19-21, 45,  
     53, 79, 158  
 character sets 19  
 characters, lowercase 20, 44, 53  
 characters, uppercase 20, 44, 53  
 checksum 99, 100  
 circuit board, main 6, 37, 121,  
     139, 169, 174  
 circuit, protection 139  
 circuits, I/O 164-168  
 circumflex 111, 114  
 CLC 189  
 CLD 189  
 clear-strobe switch 13  
 CLEOLZ 46  
 CLT 189  
 clock 141  
 clock rate 140  
 clock signals 141, 142  
 CLREOL 46  
 CLREOP 46  
 CLRGAT' 146, 177  
 CLV 189  
 CMP 189  
 codes, hex operation 194  
 codes, instruction 188-192  
 cold-start reset 80  
 colon (in Monitor commands) 93,  
     115  
 color monitor 24, 25, 160  
 color signal 160-2  
 color television set 24, 160  
 color television, NTSC 25  
 color-burst gate 153  
 colors 22  
     high-resolution 24-5, 161  
     low-resolution 23, 160  
 Column-address Strobe 151  
 command characters 88  
 complementary decimal 13  
 composite video 17, 163  
 connectors (see also slots)  
     D-type miniature 37, 167  
     for cassette recorder 8  
     for hand-controls 8, 37, 167  
     for video monitor 8  
 constant, time 39  
 CONTINUE BASIC command 102  
 control characters 50  
 CONTROL key 12, 13, 17, 50, 164  
 CONTROL - OPEN-APPLE - RESET  
     81  
 CONTROL - B 102, 116  
 CONTROL - C 50, 88, 102, 116  
 CONTROL - D 130  
 CONTROL - E 116  
 CONTROL - K 103, 130  
 CONTROL - OPEN-APPLE - RESET  
     81  
 CONTROL - P 46, 102, 117  
 CONTROL - RESET 79-81, 88  
 CONTROL - S 50  
 CONTROL - SOLID-APPLE -  
     RESET  
     81  
 CONTROL - U 46  
 CONTROL - Y 106  
 controller card, disk drive 80  
 counter, horizontal 153, 155  
 counter, program 109, 111  
 counter, vertical 153, 155  
 counters, video 153, 157  
 COUT 43, 48, 47, 58, 101  
 COUT1 47-53, 57, 129,  
     130  
 cover 4  
 CPU 6, 140, 143, 151  
 CPX 189  
 CPY 189  
 CSW 48, 129, 130  
 CSWH 129  
 CSWL 129  
 currents, supply 138  
 cursor  
     blinking 43, 54, 87, 110  
     checkerboard 43, 110  
     motion 56  
     plus sign 56  
     position 49-51, 57, 79  
 cursor-control keys 12, 55, 56  
 CV 50, 51  
 cycle stealing 149

**D**  
 D-type miniature connector 37,  
     167  
 daisy chain, priority 170  
 data bus 170  
 data strobe 37, 167  
 debounce 164  
 DEC 189  
 decimal 13, 27  
 decimal, complementary 13  
 decoder, keyboard character 6,  
     13, 149, 164

DEVICE SELECT' 122, 169, 174  
DEX 189  
DEY 189  
Diagnostics ROM 148  
direct-memory access signal 170  
disassembler 108  
disk drive controller card 80  
Disk Operating System see DOS  
display, video 11, 17-34, 152-62  
    80-column 46, 159, 175  
    buffers 65  
    display memory 154  
    display mode 27  
    display pages 26-30, 65,  
        72, 74  
    formats 19-20, 52-3  
    flashing format 19-20, 44, 52-3  
    high-resolution 161  
    inverse 19-20, 46, 52-3, 101  
    low-resolution 160  
    mixed-mode 19, 27  
    normal 19-20, 52-3, 101  
    soft switches 28  
DMA IN 170  
DMA OUT 170  
DMA' 144, 169-170  
DOS  
    and reset 80  
    and Monitor 87, 102  
    I/O links 47, 130  
    link address storage 65  
    page zero usage 64, 67, 92  
    RAM addressing 129  
DOS Manual 65, 80, 81, 130  
DOS Tool Kit 110  
    DOWN-ARROW 12  
dynamic RAM 143, 145, 149, 151

## E

editing 58  
EIA 163  
Electronic Industries  
    Association 163  
EN80' 144, 175, 177  
environmental specifications 137  
EOR 190  
ERR 100  
error message 83  
errors 111  
    ESC key 12, 13, 54, 56  
    ESC CONTROL -Q 46  
escape codes 55  
escape mode 56  
EXAMINE command 98  
exclusive-OR 81, 82  
expansion ROM 123-125

expansion slot 3 45, 46, 79  
expansion slots 7, 80, 121-33,  
    169-174  
extended 80-column text card 71

## F

F666G 111, 117  
FF69G 112, 117  
firmware (see also 80-column  
    firmware)  
    built-in I/O 43-58  
    on peripheral cards 121  
flashing display format 19-20, 44,  
    52-3  
flip-flop 124  
forced cold-start reset 79, 81  
format, inverse 19-20, 46,  
    52-57, 101  
FP 47  
functions  
    AND 52  
    stop-list 50

## G

G (Monitor command) 117  
Game I/O 167  
GAME I/O socket 168  
game inputs 37, 167  
gate, color-burst 153  
GETLN 43, 53, 56-8, 64, 88  
GO command 97, 102, 107, 111  
gotoXY 49  
GR 147, 174, 178  
graphics 22-34  
    high-resolution 18-19, 23-5, 29,  
        161  
    low-resolution 18-19, 22-3, 160  
    mixed-mode 27  
grounded outlet 138

## H

hand controls 8, 37, 167  
hand-control connector 37  
hand-control input 35, 167  
Hardware Manual 141  
hex operation codes 194  
hexadecimal 13, 14, 23, 27, 61,  
    88, 113  
hexadecimal arithmetic 103  
high-level languages 29, 43,  
    107 (see also names of  
        languages)  
high-order bit  
    and cassette I/O 37  
    and color determination  
        24-5, 162

and display format 53  
 and state of soft switches 29, 36  
 of switch input byte 38  
 high-resolution bit patterns 161  
 high-resolution graphics 18-19,  
     23-5, 29, 161  
 high-resolution graphics  
     colors 25, 161  
 high-resolution Page 1 24, 30,  
     65, 74  
 high-resolution Page 2 24, 30, 65  
 HIRES soft switch 28, 74-5, 143,  
     145  
 HOME 46  
 horizontal blanking 153  
 horizontal counter 153, 155  
 horizontal sync 153

**I**  
 I (Monitor command) 116  
 I/O  
     address decoding 164  
     built-in devices 11-41  
     built-in firmware 43-58  
     circuits 168  
     drivers 121  
     links, standard 46, 79,  
         129-130  
     memory locations 122, 132  
     subroutines 43-47, 87  
 I/O SELECT' 123, 124, 169, 172  
 I/O STROBE' 124, 125, 172  
 I/OREST 126  
 I/OSAVE 126  
 IC 6  
 IN# 103, 130  
 IN#n command 130  
 INC 190  
 index register 61, 106, 127, 140,  
     187  
 index register Y 78, 187  
 index register X 78, 128, 187  
 indirect addressing 64  
 INH' 144, 169, 173  
 input buffer 56-58, 64, 106  
 input devices 11-41  
 input features 53-58  
 INPUT statement 56-7  
 input, hand-control 35, 167  
 Input-Output Unit see IOU  
 inputs  
     analog 37, 39  
     game 167  
     switch 38, 167  
 instructions, assembly  
     language 108-11

instructions, 6502 186  
 INT 47, 110  
 INT IN 131, 170  
 INT OUT 131, 170  
 INTBASIC 110  
 INTC3ROM soft switch 46  
 Integer BASIC  
     and bank-switched memory 68  
     and the Mini-assembler 110  
     and the old Monitor 47  
     and RDKEY 54  
     and reset routine 70, 80  
     and standard I/O  
         subroutines 43  
     complementary decimal  
         with 13, 27  
     page zero usage 64, 67  
     prompt character 57  
     returning to 102  
     statements 45  
 Integrated circuit 6  
 Interface 13  
 interpreter, Applesoft BASIC 6  
 interpreter, Integer BASIC 110  
 interrupt handler 131  
 interrupt priority 131  
 interrupt requests 131, 170  
 interrupt vectors 81-2, 131  
 interrupt-handling routine 131  
 interrupts 46, 82, 126, 131, 170  
 instruction codes 188-192  
 instruction cycle 140  
 INVERSE command 101  
 inverse display format 19-20, 44,  
     46, 52-3, 101  
 INX 190  
 INY 190  
 IOU 6, 7, 143, 145, 153, 155,  
     164-7  
 IRQ vector 131, 140  
 IRQ' 131, 170, 173

**J**  
 joystick 37  
 JMP instruction 79, 106, 190  
 JSR instruction 127, 190  
 Jump to Subroutine 127

**K**  
 keyboard 5, 11-17, 43-4, 88, 164  
 KEYBOARD command 103  
 keyboard data 13, 28  
 keyboard encoder 6, 13, 149,  
     164  
 Keyboard Input Switch 130

keyboard strobe 13, 15, 28, 79, 164  
keyboard-input buffer 64  
KEYIN 43, 47, 53-56, 129-30  
keypad 165  
KSW 54, 130  
KSWH 130  
KSWL 130

**L**

L (Monitor command) 117  
language card 68, 70, 121  
languages (see also names of languages)  
assembly 29, 108-9, 113  
high-level 29, 43, 107  
machine 107-110  
last opened location 89-91, 94, 96, 107, 109  
LDA 190  
LDX 190  
LDY 190  
LED 4, 166  
LEFT-ARROW key 12, 55  
light-emitting diode 4, 166  
line voltage 137  
link addresses 47, 65, 130  
link registers 130  
link, input 54  
link, output 48  
links, standard I/O 47, 79, 129-30  
LIST command 108-10, 113  
loudspeaker 5, 166  
low-order bits 13, 24  
low-order byte 78  
low-resolution graphics 18-19, 22-3, 160  
low-resolution graphics blocks 22  
low-resolution graphics colors 23, 160  
lowercase characters 20, 44, 53  
LSR 191

**M**

M (Monitor command) 115  
machine language 107-10  
main circuit board 6, 37, 121, 139, 169, 174  
main memory 30, 73, 75, 77, 78, 121  
memory  
auxiliary 26, 30, 71-78  
bank-switched 68-71, 74, 79  
display 29-34, 154  
I/O 122, 131

main 30, 73, 75, 77, 78, 127  
programmable see RAM  
read-only see ROM  
memory addressing 148-151  
memory dump 89-91  
memory locations  
I/O devices 11, 13, 27, 28, 41  
peripheral card 122  
Memory Management Unit 6, 143, 151  
memory maps 29, 31-4, 62, 63  
memory organization 61-83  
memory page 1 61, 73  
memory page 2 61  
memory page 3 65  
memory page zero see zero page  
memory pages 61  
memory range 91  
microprocessor, 6502 6, 140-142  
accumulator 126  
circuitry 170  
contents of registers 97  
data bus 170  
interrupt requests 131  
instructions 107, 186  
memory addressing 61, 64, 121, 124, 148-151  
stack 64, 73  
timing 142, 149, 151  
Mini-assembler 57, 110-14  
Mini-assembler commands 117  
MIXED soft switch 28, 145  
mixed-mode display 19, 27  
MMU 6, 143, 151  
mnemonic 108, 111, 113, 114  
Monitor, Autostart 47  
Monitor, old 47, 110  
Monitor, System 43, 57, 63-6, 87-117, 129-31, 148  
Monitor commands 88-107, 109, 115-7  
Monitor ROM 148  
monitor, black-and-white 22, 24  
monitor, color 24, 25, 160  
monitor, video 8, 17, 152  
MOVE command 94-7, 105  
multiplexed addressing 150-1

**N**

N (Monitor command) 116  
n CONTROL-P 129  
National Television Standards Committee see NTSC  
next changeable location 89, 91, 93, 94, 96

NMI 140  
NMI' 170, 173  
NOP 191  
NORMAL command 101  
normal display format 19-20, 52-3, 101  
NTSC 17, 18, 24, 152, 160, 163  
NTSC color television 25  
numeric pad 165  
nybble 22, 160

## O

old Monitor 47, 110  
opcode 110, 194  
OPEN-APPLE key 12, 17, 38, 41, 81  
operand 110, 111  
operating temperature 137  
operation codes 110, 194  
DRA 191  
outlet, grounded 138  
output devices 11, 17-41  
annunciator 37  
cassette 36  
strobe 38  
video display 17-34  
output link 48  
output routine, standard 57  
overflow 78  
overflow bit 78

## P

paddles 167  
page 1, memory 61, 73  
page 3, memory 65  
Page 1, high-resolution 24, 30, 65, 71  
Page 1, text 26, 32, 65, 74  
Page 2, high-resolution 24, 30, 65  
Page 2, text 26, 27  
page zero see zero page  
PAGE2 soft switch 28, 30, 72-5, 143, 145, 151  
pages, memory 61  
PAL 143, 147, 151  
Pascal 43, 107  
PEEK 14, 27, 38, 39  
period (.) 89  
peripheral cards 8, 121-133, 138, 169-74  
base addresses 127-9  
I/O space 122  
ROM space 122, 133  
subroutines 126

peripheral devices 121-33, 169-74  
peripheral hardware 137  
peripheral slots see expansion slots  
PG2 158, 161  
PHA 191  
phi 0 141, 142, 144, 146, 147, 151, 167, 174, 177  
phi 1 141, 142, 147, 151, 173, 178  
phi 2 141  
phone jacks 8  
PHP 191  
pipelining 6, 140  
PLA 191  
PLP 191  
plus sign (inverse format) 56  
pointer, slack 64, 79, 140, 185, 187  
POKE 27  
potentiometers 39  
power 4, 5  
power connector 139  
power consumption 138  
power cord 6, 138  
power supply 5, 138-9  
power switch 6  
power-on reset 79  
power-up byte 81-2  
PR# 103, 130  
PR#0 46  
PR#3 46  
PR#n 129  
PREAD 40  
primary character set 19-21, 45, 53, 79, 158  
PRINT statement 45, 130  
PRINTER command 102, 103  
priority daisy chain 170  
processor status register 187  
program counter 109, 111  
program, assembly language 43  
programmable memory see RAM  
programmable storage 61, 63  
Programmed Array Logic device 143, 147, 151  
PROM 121-3  
prompt characters 43, 56, 57  
· 87  
· 110  
· 111  
protection circuit 139  
pseudo-random number 54  
pull-up resistors 167  
pushbutton switches 167

**Q**

03 141, 144, 146, 147, 151, 173

**R**

R (Monitor command) 99-100, 116  
R/W' 144, 146, 176  
R/W80 175  
RAM  
and Monitor 47  
and peripheral cards 121  
and reset 79  
auxiliary 63, 71, 79  
bank-switched 68-70, 74, 80, 110  
dynamic 143, 145, 149, 151  
memory access 61, 149  
reserved memory 63  
second bank 70  
RAMRD 73-75, 143  
RAMWRT 73-75, 143  
random number 54  
random number, pseudo 54  
random-access memory see RAM  
RAS 151  
RDKEY 43, 47, 54, 56  
reading data 28  
reading to secondary I/O 35  
READ command 99-100, 116  
read only memory see ROM  
read/write signal 142  
recorder, cassette 8, 36, 166  
registers 97, 126, 140, 187 (see also accumulator)  
index 61, 127, 140, 185, 187  
link 130  
processor status 140, 187  
program counter 187  
size of 140  
stack pointer 64, 79, 140, 185, 187  
relative addressing 108, 114, 126  
repeating keys 11  
RES' 173  
reserved memory pages 63  
RESET key 12, 13, 17, 79-81, 83  
reset routine 17, 79-83  
reset vector 70, 79-83  
RESET' 146  
reset, cold-start 80  
reset, forced cold-start 81  
reset, power-on 79  
reset, warm-start 80  
resident program 81  
resistor, variable 168  
resistors, pull-up 167  
restricted-case mode 58  
Return from Subroutine 108, 127, 129, 130, 192  
retype 58  
RF modulator 17, 152  
RIGHT-ARROW key 12, 58  
ROL 191  
rollover 11  
ROM 6  
and bank-switched memory 68-70, 73, 79  
and memory addressing 61, 148  
and the Monitor 47  
character-generator 161  
Diagnostics 148  
expansion 123-5  
Monitor 148  
peripheral card 125, 132-3  
ROR 191  
routines 217-223  
routines, interrupt-handling 131  
Row-address Strobe 151  
RTI 192  
RTS 108, 127, 129, 130, 192

**S**

SBC 192  
scrolling 49, 50  
SEC 192  
second bank of RAM 70  
SED 192  
SEI 192  
self test 17, 83, 131, 148  
SHIFT key 12, 13, 17, 164  
short circuits 5, 139  
signal, read/write 142  
signals, clock 141-2  
signals, timing 141-2, 149, 159, 161, 162, 169  
slot number 126-30  
slot, auxiliary see auxiliary slot  
slot, expansion see expansion slots  
SLOTC3ROM 132, 133, 143  
SLOTCXROM 132, 143  
slots, ventilation 137  
soft switches 27, 92, 127, 143, 145 (see also names of switches)  
and self test 83  
annunciator 37  
auxiliary memory 75  
bank select 69, 73-6, 79

definition 15  
display 11, 28  
game I/O 167  
keyboard 164  
speaker 35  
SOLID-APPLE key 12, 17, 38, 41, 81, 83  
sounds 5  
speaker 5, 11, 35, 164, 166  
    memory locations 41  
    soft switches 35  
special function keys 17  
specifications, environmental 137  
STA 192  
stack 64, 74, 78, 126  
stack overflow 64  
stack pointer 64, 79, 140, 185, 187  
standard I/O links 47, 79, 129-31  
standard I/O subroutines 43-57, 87  
standard input routine see KEYIN  
standard output routine see COUT  
startup 80  
stop-list feature 50  
stop-list function 50  
strobe  
    column-address 151  
    data 37, 167  
    keyboard 13, 15, 28, 79, 164  
    row-address 151  
strobe bit 14  
strobe output 35, 38, 40, 167  
STX 192  
STY 192  
subcarrier, color 25, 160  
subroutines 217-223  
    auxiliary memory 76-79  
    built-in 76-79  
    I/O 43-58, 87  
    peripheral-card 126  
    standard input 54, 56  
subtraction 103  
supply currents 138  
supply voltage 138  
switch 0 38  
switch 1 38  
switch inputs 38, 167  
switches, pushbutton 167  
symbolic labels 110  
SYNC' 146, 153, 174  
sync, horizontal 153  
*Synertek Hardware Manual* 141  
*Synertek Programming Manual* 113

System Monitor see Monitor, System

## T

tape recorder 36, 98, 166  
TAX 192  
TAY 192  
television set 17, 22, 24, 25, 152  
temperature 137  
ten-key numeric pad 165  
TEXT soft switch 28, 145  
text 19-21, 26-32  
text card see 80-column text card  
text card, extended 80-column 71  
text characters see character sets  
text Page 1 26, 32, 65, 74  
text Page 2 26, 27  
text window 48-52, 79  
text, 40-column see 40-column text  
text, 80-column see 80-column text  
three-state buffers 170  
time constant 39  
timing signals 141-2, 149, 159, 161, 162, 169  
toggle 35  
transistor-transistor logic 167  
TSX 192  
TTL 167  
TV set see television set  
TXA 193  
TXS 193  
TYA 193

## U

UP-ARROW 12  
uppercase characters 20, 44, 53  
uppercase-restrict mode 45  
USER

## V

V (Monitor command) 115  
validity-check byte 80, 82  
variable resistor 168  
VBL 28, 145, 154  
vectors 47, 65, 71  
    interrupt 81-2, 131  
    reset 70, 79-83  
ventilation slots 137  
VERIFY command 96, 97, 105  
vertical blanking 145, 154  
vertical counter 153, 155  
video counters 153, 157  
video display see display, video  
video modulator 17, 18

video monitor 8, 17, 152  
video output signal 25, 163  
voltage, line 137, 138  
voltage, supply 138

## W

W (Monitor command) 98-100, 116  
warm-start reset 80  
window, text 48-52  
WNDW' 146, 153, 176  
WRITE command 98-100, 116  
write-protect 69  
writing data 28  
writing to secondary I/O 35

## X

X register 78, 187  
XFER 76-9

## Y

Y register 78, 128, 187

## Z

zero page 61, 64, 66-7, 73-8, 92, 113, 126  
zero-page addressing 113

## Numbers

14M 141, 147, 177  
3.58 MHz color signal 160-2  
3.58M (PAL signal) 147  
3.58M (slot 7 signal) 174  
3.58M (auxiliary slot signal) 176  
3D0G 102  
40-column text 18, 26, 44, 154  
6502 microprocessor  
see microprocessor, 6502  
6502 stack 73  
6502B microprocessor 6, 140  
7M 141, 147, 173, 178  
80-column display 7, 30, 46, 72, 159, 175  
80-column firmware 45-47, 110, 123-24  
CDUT1 subroutine 52  
deactivating 102  
in ROM 148  
KEYIN subroutine 54, 56  
memory use 131, 133  
reset routine 79  
80-column text 18, 21, 30, 44, 154, 162, 175  
80-column text card 7, 17, 21, 46, 71, 133  
80-column text mode 26

80COL soft switch 28, 145, 161  
80STORE soft switch 28, 30, 72, 75, 143, 175  
80VID soft switch 158, 161  
80VID' signal 146, 147, 177

## Cast of Characters

A 111, 114  
? 57  
> 57, 110  
] 57  
^ 57, 87  
! 57, 111  
\_ 89  
\$ (in addresses) 113  
\$ (with Monitor command) 111, 117  
: (in Monitor commands) 93, 115  
+ (inverse format) 56  
CONTROL -B 102, 116  
CONTROL -C 50, 88, 102, 116  
CONTROL -D 130  
CONTROL -E 116  
CONTROL -K 103, 130  
CONTROL -P 46, 102, 117  
CONTROL -S 50  
CONTROL -U 46  
CONTROL -Y 106  
ϕ0 141, 142, 144, 146, 147, 150, 167, 174, 177  
ϕ1 141, 142, 147, 150, 173, 178  
ϕ2 141



20525 Mariani Avenue  
Cupertino, CA 95014  
(408) 996-1010  
TLX 171576

030-03578